EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 6

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers



For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Kakuru Dismus**

Ndagire Joan

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa.**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Six has been developed basing on the revised Primary Six Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organized, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Six in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the pupils.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts.

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN EAST AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TERM ONE

Topic 1: East African Community (EAC)

Historical background of EAC

- Location of the East African Community member states using lines of latitude and lines of longitude.....6
- Using the Prime meridian to tell the international time.....9
- Formation of the East African Community.....9
- Revival of the EAC.....12
- Organs of the EAC.....15
- Symbols of the EAC.....17
- National symbols of the EAC member states.....18

The People of East Africa

- Origin of human beings.....25
- Sources of history.....25
- Archaeological sites in East Africa.....28
- Stone age.....29
- Ethnic groups in East Africa.....31
- Migrations and settlement patterns in East Africa.....37
- Political organisation of different ethnic groups in East Africa.....42
- Social organisation of ethnic groups in East Africa.....48
- Economic organisation among different ethnic groups in East Africa.....52

Early visitors to East Africa

- The Arab traders 55
- Long distance trade and slave trade.....56
- European traders 61
- Christian missionaries in East Africa 61

Population in East Africa

- Population growth.....65
- Population census 66
- Population distribution 67
- Population density 70

TERM TWO.

Topic 2: Major resources of East Africa

- Types of resources 73
- Land as a resource 73
- Vegetation as a resource 74
- Animals as a resource 82
- Tourism industry in East Africa 86
- Climate as a resource 87
- Crop growing in East Africa.....91
- Livestock farming in East Africa 98

- Mountains as a resource 101
- Mineral resources in East Africa 104
- Lakes in East Africa 107
- Major rivers in East Africa 112
- Fishing in East Africa 115

Topic 3. Transport and Communication in East Africa.

- Road transport in East Africa.....121
- Water transport in East Africa 124
- Air transport in East Africa 125
- Pipeline transport 127
- Railway transport in East Africa 127
- Means of communication 130
- Radio communication 132
- Newspapers 133
- Television communication.....134
- Telephone communication 135
- Post office 136

TERM THREE.

Topic 4. The Road to Independence in East Africa.

- European explorers in East Africa 140
- The Portuguese explorers in East Africa 144
- Scramble for and partition of Africa 147
- Establishment of colonial rule in East Africa 148
- Colonial administrative systems in East Africa 152
- German rule in Tanganyika 153
- British rule in Kenya 155
- Colonial rule in Uganda 157
- Reactions to colonial rule in East Africa 162
- Rebellions against colonial rule in East Africa 162
- The struggle for independence in East Africa.....166
- The formation of political parties in East Africa 167
- Independence movement leaders in East Africa 171
- Effects of colonial rule in East Africa 173
- Post independence East Africa 174
- Leaders of East African countries since independence 175
- Challenges facing East African countries 178
- Democratic rule in East Africa 179

Topic 5. Responsible living in the East African environment.

- Introduction to the environment 189
- Environmental practices 189
- Sustainable use of the environment 191
- Waste management 193
- Environmental conservation 194
- Consequences of irresponsible living in the environment 196
- Climate change 198

TOPIC 1: **EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY**

LOCATION OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY MEMBERSTATES

- Location is the determination of features where they are found.

Ways of locating places on a map

- ❖ By using the grid reference system.
- ❖ By using the compass direction.
- ❖ By using neighbourhood.

Ways of locating direction of places

- ❖ By using the position of the sun.
- ❖ By using land marks.
- ❖ By using a compass.

Locating places using the grid reference system.

- Grid reference system is the method of locating place using lines of latitude and lines of longitude.
- East African Community (EAC) member countries are located between lines of latitude 12°S, 13°N and lines of longitude 24°E,42°E

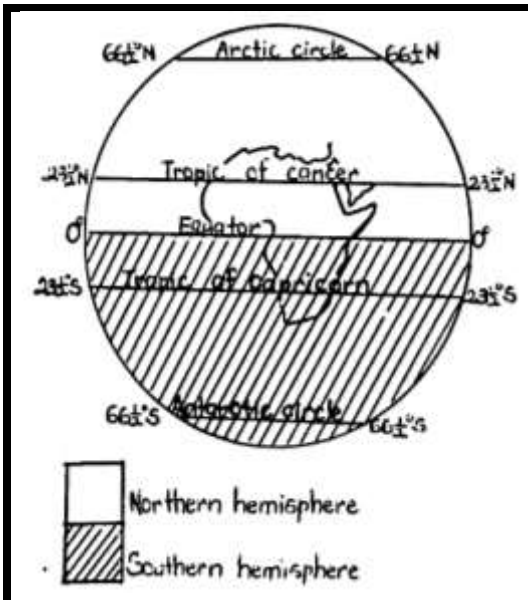
LINES OF LATITUDE

- Lines of latitude are imaginary lines drawn on a map or globe from West to East.
- Latitude is the distance in degrees North or South of the equator.
- Parallels is the general name given to lines of latitude.
- They are called parallels because they do not meet at any point.
- All lines of latitudes are measured in degrees.

Major lines of latitude.

- The Equator (0°)
- Tropic of Cancer (23½°N)
- Tropic of Capricorn (23½°S)
- Arctic circle (66½°N)
- Antarctic circle (66½°S)

A diagram showing the position of major lines of latitude.



The Equator

- The Equator divides the world into two equal parts (hemispheres)
- The Equator is marked 0° because it is the starting point for all latitude readings.
- The Equator is the most important line of latitude because it crosses the world at the centre.
- All countries which are crossed by the equator lie in both the Northern and Southern hemisphere.
- *A hemisphere* is a half part of the world as divided by the equator or prime meridian.
- The area between the Tropic of cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn is called the *Tropical region*.
- The equator crosses lake George and lake Victoria in Uganda.

Learning activity.

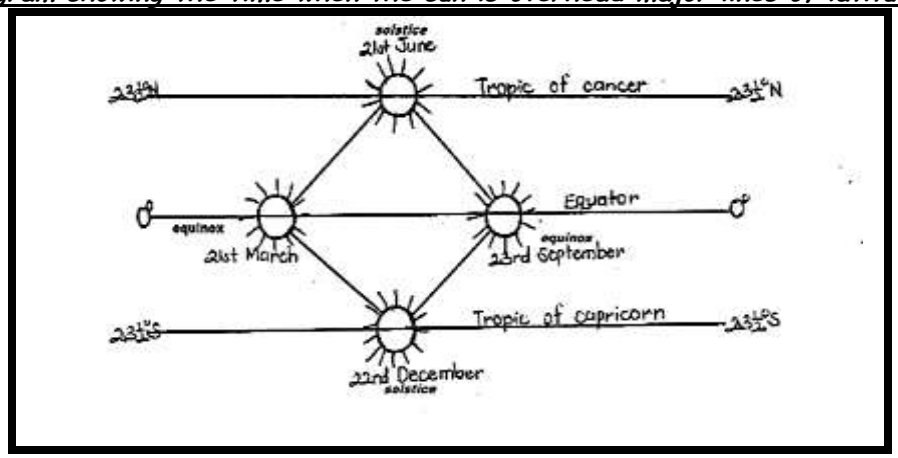
Use the political map of East Africa in your Atlas and identify all East African countries that;

(i) are crossed by the Equator.
(ii) completely lie in the Northern hemisphere
(iii) completely lie in the Southern hemisphere.
(iv) lie in both the Northern and the Southern hemisphere

Note:

- ✓ *During the revolution of the earth around the sun, the sun is overhead the Equator on March 21st and September 23rd.This period is called Equinox.*
- ✓ *The revolution of the earth is the movement of the earth around the sun.*
- ✓ *The revolution of the earth* ***causes changes in seasons.***
- ✓ *During this time, the night and day time period worldwide is equal, sometimes high temperatures is experienced and heavy rainfall is received along the equator.*
- ✓ ***Tropical region*** *is the area of land lying between the Tropic of cancer and Tropic of Capricorn.*
- ✓ ***Equinox*** *is the time of the year when the sun is overhead the equator.*
- ✓ ***Solstice*** *is the time of the year when the sun is overhead the tropics.*

A diagram showing the time when the sun is overhead major lines of latitude.



- **As the earth revolves the earth/moves around (orbits) the sun, it is tilted at 0°. The point is in a fixed direction.**
- **Therefore in March and September the areas along the equator point towards the sun and receive sunlight for long hours causing a lot of heat in those places.**
- **The revolution of the earth takes 365 days(1 year).**

Effect of the earth's revolution.

-It causes changes in seasons e.g spring, autumn, winter and summer seasons

NB: *Uganda experiences only two seasons i.e.wet season and dry season.*

The rotation of the earth

- **The rotation of the earth is the turning of the earth on its axis. It takes 24 hours for the earth to make a complete turn.**
- **The rotation of the earth is seen in the rising and setting of the sun.**
- **Places far in the East see the sun earlier than those in the West because the earth rotates from West to East.**
- **The Rotation of the earth on its axis causes days and nights.**

Other effects of the rotation of the earth

- ❖ **It causes formation of tides.**
- ❖ **It changes the direction of wind.**
- ❖ **It causes ocean currents.**

Neighbours of the EAC crossed by the equator

- ❖ **Somalia**
- ❖ **Democratic Republic of Congo(D.R.C)**

Importance of lines of latitude.

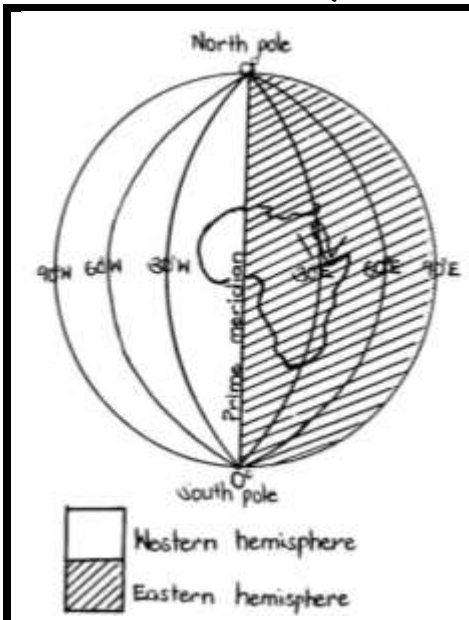
- ❖ **They help to determine the climate of an area.**

LINES OF LONGITUDE

- These are imaginary lines drawn on a map or globe from the North pole to the South pole.
- Longitude is the distance in degrees East or West of the Prime meridian.
- Meridians is the general name given to lines of longitude.

Major lines of longitudes

- Prime meridian/Greenwich meridian (0°)
- International Date Line (180°E or W of the Prime meridian)



The Prime meridian/ Greenwich meridian

- The Prime meridian is also called the *Greenwich meridian* because it crosses Greenwich town in London.
- The Prime meridian is marked 0º because it is the starting point for all longitude readings.
- The Prime meridian divides the world into the Eastern and Western hemisphere.
- All countries crossed by the Prime meridian lie in both the Eastern and Western hemisphere.

Countries in Africa crossed by the prime meridian

-Algeria -Mali -Ghana -Burkina Faso

NOTE;

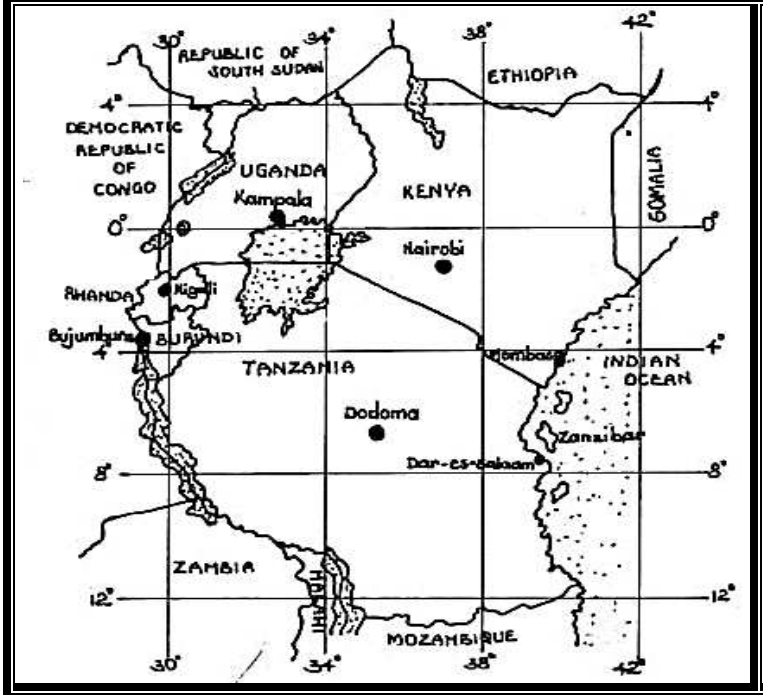
- ***Accra,*** *Ghana is a city in West Africa which is crossed by the Prime meridian.*
- *The Prime meridian helps in telling international time.*
- *The International dateline separates one day from the next day.*

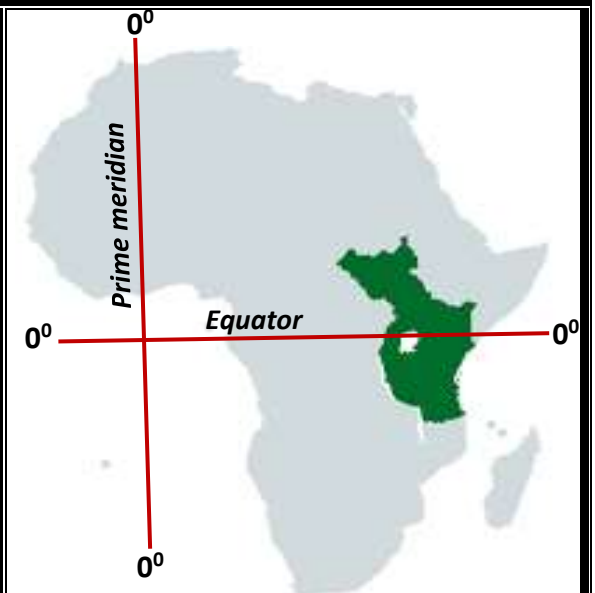
e.g. East of the Greenwich meridian may be Friday while West of it is Thursday.

East africa completely lies in the Eastern hemisphere.

- *Lines of longitude help to determine time zones.*
- ***Both lines of longitude and lines of latitude help in locating places on a map.***

Location of lines of longitude and lines of latitude on the map of East Africa.





Location of the EAC member states on the map of Africa

Finding time according to Greenwich Mean Time (G.M.T)

- **The earth makes a full rotation of 360° in 1 day(24hours). Therefore the earth moves 15° in every 1 hour.**
- **Every 15°Eor W of the prime meridian is a time zone.**
- **Different regions in the world have different time zones according to the distance from the prime meridian.**
- **Places in the same time zone have the same standard time.**
- **East African countries like Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania have the same time because they lie in the same time zone. The time zone for Uganda, Kenya, and Tanzania is known as the East African Standard Time. The three countries lie at longitude 45°.**

How to calculate time using the lines of longitude.

Points to note when calculating time in any given country.

- ✓ *When you travel 15^0 westwards, you lose an hour while travelling 15^0 eastwards makes you gain an hour.*
- ✓ *We usually add **(+)** hours for places which are in the East and subtract **(-)** the time when finding the time for places which are in the West.*
- ✓ *Changing of the time to and from **24hr** clock (by either adding or subtracting 12 hrs) affects the units in which the time is given.(ie. From am to pm and viceversa).*
- ✓ *Time in each time zone is calculated basing on the Greenwich mean time (GMT) which is at 0^0 longitude.*

Example 1.

Find the time in East Africa which is 45^0 if it is 2:00pm at GMT.

Solution,

15^0=1hr

45^0=($\frac{45}{15}$) hrs.

=3hrs

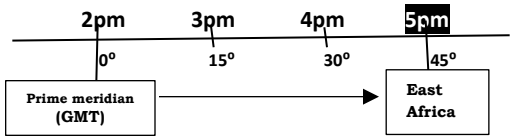
Time in East Africa=2:00pm

+3.00hrs

5:00pm

*Therefore, time in East Africa is **5:00pm.***

OR:



*Therefore, time in East Africa is **5:00pm***

Example 2.

What time will it be in a country which is 60^0W if it is 2:00pm in Ghana?

Solution,

15^0=1hr

60^0=($\frac{60}{15}$) hrs

=4hrs

Time in that coutry is = 2:00pm (+12hours)

-4.00hrs

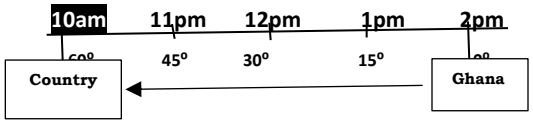
=14.00hrs

-4.00hrs

10:00am

*Therefore, the time in that country will be **10:00am**.*

OR:



*Therefore, time in that country will be **10:00am***

THE HISTORICAL BACKGROUND OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY.

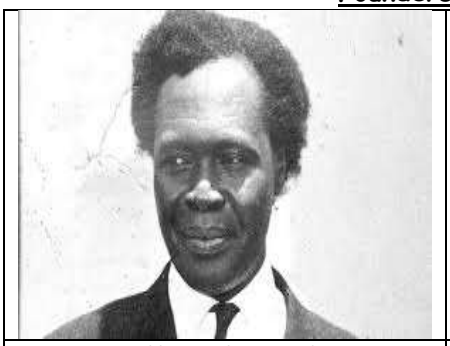
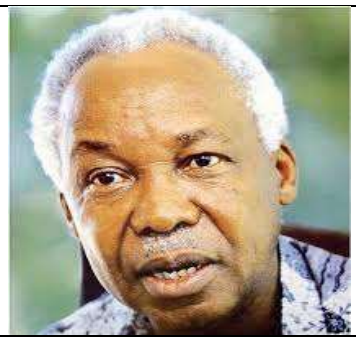
- **The East African Community is a group of countries in Eastern Africa that are united to promote trade. It is an example of common markets or regional groupings.**
- **It is an inter-governmental organisation meaning it brings several states together.**
- **The EAC was formed on 1st December 1967 to replace the East African Common Services Organisation. The East African Common Services organisation had been formed in 1961.**
- **The EACSO had its headquarters at Nairobi in Kenya.**

- The EACSO replaced the East African High Commission (EAHC) which had been formed in 1946 after the second world war.
- Creech Jones, the British colonial secretary in East Africa by then, advocated for the formation of the EAHC.

The EAC as a common market

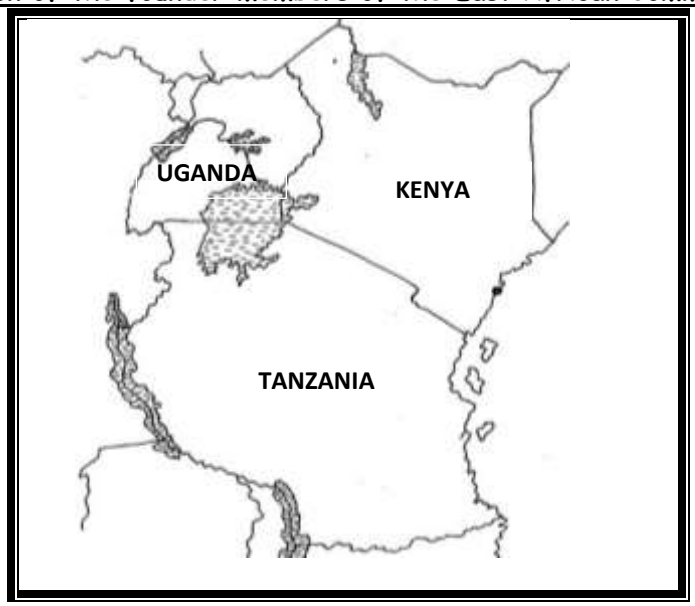
- A Common market is an organisation that brings countries together with an aim of promoting trade.
- It can also be called a regional economic grouping or an economic bloc.

Founders of the East African Community

		
Apollo Milton Obote	***Jomo Kenyatta***	***Julius Nyerere***

Founder member of EAC	*Founder of EAC*
• Uganda • Kenya • Tanzania	• Dr.Apollo Milton Obote • Mzee Jomo Kenyatta • Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere.

Location of the founder members of the East African Community



Reasons for the formation of the East African Community (Objectives/ Aims of EAC)

- To promote regional trade.
- To set up a similar currency value.
- To have common taxes on goods for similar prices.
- To equally share the services of the former East African Common Services Organisation.
- To widen market for goods from member states.
- To promote cooperation and unity among the member states.
- To promote easy movement of goods and people across borders of the member states.

Departments of the former East African Community and the services they provided.

Department	*Headquarters*	*Services Provided*
East African Development Bank (EADB)	Kampala	-It funded developmental projects of the member states. -It provided loans to member states.
East African Flying School (EAFS)	Soroti	-It trained pilots of the East African Airways.
East African Airways (EAA)	Nairobi	-It provided air transport. -It was responsible for development of airports and airfields.
East African Examinations Council (EAEC)	Nairobi	-It was responsible for setting, marking and releasing examination results.
East African Railways and Harbours(EARH)	Nairobi	-It dealt with railway and water transport.
East African Posts and Telecommunication Cooperation (EAPTC)	Kampala	-It provided telephone services and delivered letters and parcels.

Other departments of the defunct EAC.

- East African Income Tax- Nairobi
- East African Industrial Research- Nairobi
- East African Meteorological Department- Nairobi
- East African Customs and Excise Duty- Mombasa
- East African Marine Fisheries Research- Zanzibar
- East African Institute of Medical Research- Mwanza
- East African Civil aviation Board- Arusha
- East African Virus Research Institute- Entebbe
- East African Railway Repair Workshops- Kisumu
- East African Fresh Water Fisheries Research- Jinja
- East African Trypanosomiasis Research- Tororo
- East African Literature Bureau- Nairobi
- East African School of Library and Information Science- Nairobi

Achievements of the former EAC 1967-1977.

- It helped to start industrial projects through the EADB.
- It promoted regional cooperation through its common services.
- It promoted peace and unity among the member states.
- It created a wider market for goods from member states.

THE COLLAPSE/DISINTEGRATION OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY IN 1977

Reasons why the EAC collapsed

- Political and ideological difference.
- Declaration of Idi Amin Dada to take control of the Western part of Kenya.
- Harassment of Kenyans in Tanzania
- Misunderstandings among the three heads of state of the EAC.
- Economic imbalances / unequal distribution of resources among the member states .
- Shortage of funds to facilitate its activities.
- The closure of border between Kenya and Tanzania.

Heads of state of the EAC member states at the time of its collapse.

- Idi Amin dada
- Jomo Kenyatta
- Julius Kambarage Nyerere

		
Idi Amin Dada	***Jomo Kenyatta***	***Julius Nyerere***

Effects of the collapse of the EAC

- ❖ **It led to decline in trade.**
- ❖ **It restricted the movement of people and goods in East Africa.**
- ❖ **It led to mistreatment of people from member states .**
- ❖ **It led to enmity among the East African countries.**
- ❖ **The community assets were shared.**
- ❖ **It became difficult for Uganda to access her neighbours' sea ports.**

Departments that survived the collapse of the EAC.

- **East African Development Bank.**
- **East African Flying School**
- **East African School of Library and Information Science.**

Problems that were faced by the East African Community.

- ❖ **Shortage of funds to run its activities.**
- ❖ **Political and ideological difference.**
- ❖ **Military coup in Uganda.**
- ❖ **Production of similar goods.**
- ❖ **Internal conflicts.**
- ❖ **Absence of a common language.**
- ❖ **Absence of a common currency.**

REVIVAL OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY IN 2001.

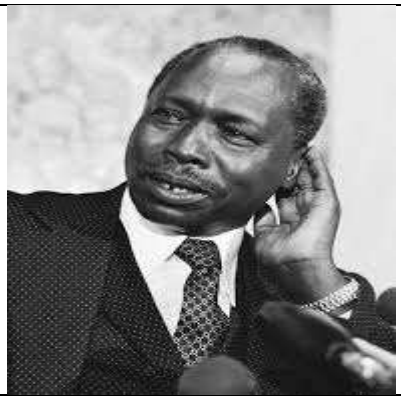
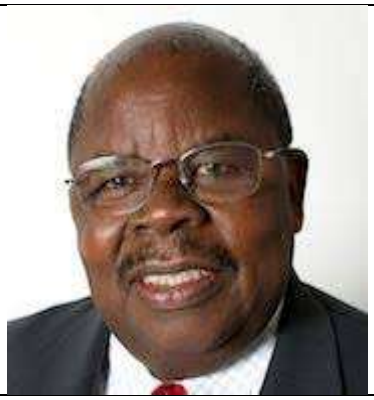
- **The final agreement to revive the East African Community was signed on 30th November,1999.**
- **It was signed at Amri Abeid Memorial stadium in Tanzania.**

Note:

-The East African Community was called the ***East African Cooperation*** *from 1993-1999.*

Presidents who revived the East African Community.

- **Yoweri K. Museveni of Uganda.**
- **Daniel Arap Moi of Kenya.**
- **Benjamin Mkapa of Tanzania.**

		
H.E Yoweri Museveni	***Daniel Arap Moi***	***Benjamin Mkapa***

Reasons why the East African Community was revived.

- ❖ To have common taxes on goods.
- ❖ To reduce smuggling of goods.
- ❖ To have a common currency in East Africa.
- ❖ To promote peace and security in the region.
- ❖ To promote cooperation and unity among the member states.
- ❖ To promote easy movement of people and goods across borders of the member states.
- ❖ To reduce on trade barriers.

The Expansion of the East African Community

- Rwanda in 2007
- Burundi in 2007
- South Sudan in 2016

Reasons why Rwanda, Burundi and South Sudan joined the East African Community.

- ❖ To easily handle oversea goods through port Dar-es -salaam and Mombasa.
- ❖ To enjoy free movement of people and goods among member states.
- ❖ To get a wider market for their goods.
- ❖ To get some goods they do not produce.
- ❖ To promote cooperation and friendship with their neighbours.

The current member states of the East African Community.

Country	*Capital City*	*President*	*Currency Used*	*Area of land (km2)*
Tanzania	Dodoma	John Pombe Magufuli	Tanzanian shilling	945,087
Uganda	Kampala	Yoweri Kaguta Museveni	Ugandan shilling	241,037
Kenya	Nairobi	Uhuru Kenyatta	Kenyan shilling	580,367
Rwanda	Kigali	Paul Kagame	Rwandan Franc	26,338
Burundi	Gitega	Evariste Ndayishimiye	Burundian Franc	27,834
South Sudan	Juba	Salva Kiir Mayardt	South Sudanese pound	619,745

Note:- *The largest country among the EAC member states is* ***Tanzania.***
-The smallest country among the EAC member states is ***Rwanda.***

A map showing the location of the current East African Community member states.



Benefits of the East African Community.

a) To an individual/ people of East Africa.

- ❖ It has created employment opportunities for people.
- ❖ People are able to get goods that is not produced in their countries.
- ❖ It has widened market for traders' goods.
- ❖ It has allowed free movement of people and goods across borders.
- ❖ It has reduced taxes imposed on their imported goods.

b) To member states of EAC.

- ❖ It has promoted cooperation and unity among member states.
- ❖ It has promoted peace and stability in the member states.
- ❖ It has created a wider market for goods produced in the member states.
- ❖ It has enabled land locked member states to access sea ports.

c) To non-member states of EAC.

- ❖ It has created a wider market for their goods.
- ❖ The EAC member countries provide skilled labour to non-member states of EAC.
- ❖ The EAC member countries provide security to non-member states of EAC.
- ❖ The EAC member states provide jobs to people from non-member states of EAC.

LAND LOCKED MEMBER STATES OF THE EAC

- **A land locked country is a country without a coastline.**
- **Land locked countries are completely surrounded by other countries.**

Member states of EAC which are land locked.

- Uganda
- Burundi
- Rwanda
- South Sudan

Neighbouring countries of the EAC which are land locked.

- Ethiopia
- Malawi
- Zambia
- Central African Republic (C.A.R)

Problems faced by land locked countries.

- ❖ Delay of oversea goods in transit.
- ❖ High taxes charged on imported oversea goods.
- ❖ High transport costs when importing and exporting goods.
- ❖ High prices for imported goods.

Possible solutions for the above challenges.

- ❖ By joining the regional grouping.
- ❖ By improving on the air transport system.
- ❖ By encouraging local industrial production.
- ❖ By cooperating with non-land locked countries.
- ❖ By building modern road networks.
- ❖ By using various sea ports when importing and exporting goods.

NON-LAND LOCKED COUNTRIES.

- **A Non-land locked country is a country which has coastline.**

Non-land locked member states of the EAC.

- Tanzania
- Kenya

Neighbouring countries of the EAC which are non-land locked.

- Mozambique
- Democratic Republic of Congo (D.R.C)
- Sudan
- Somalia

Major sea ports that handle East Africa's goods.

- Port Mombasa
- Port Dar-es-salaam
- Port Matadi in Democratic Republic Of Congo

Benefits enjoyed by non-land locked countries.

- They pay low taxes on imported goods.
- Their oversea goods do not delayed in transit.
- They meet less transport costs when importing their oversea goods.
- They get taxes through taxing goods of land locked countries that pass through them.

ORGANS OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY.

- The Summit
- The Council of Ministers
- The Secretariat
- The East African Legislative Assembly (EALA)
- The East African Court of Justice (EACJ)
- The Coordinating committee
- The Sectoral committee

The Summit

- It is the topmost organ of the EAC.
- It is composed of the heads of state of the EAC member states.
- Its main role is to direct the activities of the EAC.
- It is headed by the chairperson.
- The current chairperson of the EAC is _____.

The Secretariat.

- The secretariat is based in Arusha, Tanzania.
- It is headed by the secretary general.
- It runs the daily affairs of the EAC.
- The current secretary general is Dr. Liberat Mfumukeko.

Duties of the secretary general.

- To administer and manage the finances of the EAC.
- To give information on the community programmes to stake holders and general public.
- He/she monitors the community activities.
- Mobilises funds from development partners to implement community projects.
- Prepares and submits the budget of the EAC.

Secretary Generals of the EAC from 1996

Name	*Year*	*Country*
Francis Muthaura	1996-2001	Kenya
Amanya Mushega	2001-2006	Uganda
Juma Mwapachu	2006-2011	Tanzania
Dr. Richard Sezibera	2011-2016	Rwanda
Dr.Liberat Mfumukeko	2016-to date	Burundi

The Council of Ministers.

- It is composed of ministers of foreign affairs from each member state.
- Its role is to make decisions on behalf of the summit.
- It monitors the implementation of the EAC policies.

The Sectoral committee.

- Its members are appointed by the council of ministers.
- It prepares development programmes.
- It monitors the implementation of the policies of the EAC.

The Co-ordinating committee.

- It consists of the permanent secretaries for ministers of regional co-operation from each member state.
- It reports to the council of ministers.
- It implements the decisions of the council of ministers.
- It coordinates the activities of the sectoral committee.

East African Legislative Assembly (EALA)

- It serves as the parliament of the EAC.
- It makes laws for the EAC.
- It is made up of members of parliament, 9 from each member state.
- It is headed by the speaker.
- The current speaker of the EAC is Hon. Martin Ngoga.
- It discusses and approves the EAC budget.

Speakers of EALA since the revival of the EAC.

Name	*Year*	*Country*
Abdulrahman Kinana	2001-2006	Tanzania
Abdirahim Abdi	2006-2011	Kenya
Margaret Nantogo Zziwa	2012-2014	Uganda
Hon.Daniel Fred Kidega	2014-2017	Uganda
Hon.Martin Ngoga	2017-present	Rwanda

The East African Court of Justice.

- It is headed by the president.
- The current president of the EACJ is Emmanuel Ujirashebuja.
- It promotes human rights among the EAC member states.
- It settles disputes among member states.

Departments of the current East African Community.

- Lake Victoria Basin Commission (LVBC)
- Inter-University Council of East Africa(IUCEA)
- Civil Aviation Safety and Security Oversight Agency.(CASSOA)
- Lake Victoria Environment Programme (LVEP)
- Lake Victoria Fisheries Organisation (LVFO)
- East African Development Bank (EADB)
- East African Flying School (EAFS)

Problems/ challenges facing EAC as a common market

- Lack of a common language.
- Shortage funds to finance its activities.
- Production of similar goods.
- Absence of a common currency.
- Desire for prestige by some member states.
- Political differences among member states.
- Political instability in some among member states.
- Importation of low quality goods.
- Poor transport and communication.

Suggested solutions to challenges facing common markets in east Africa

- By forming a joint army to promote security in the region.
- By forming economic partnerships with other regional groupings.
- By adopting a common language like Kiswahili.
- By promoting good governance and democracy in the region.
- By improving the transport and communication network.

Ways regional bodies promote trade.

- By promoting free trade zones.
- By promoting peace and security in the region.
- By organising trade fares.
- By widening market for goods and services.

- ❖ By developing a common taxation policy.
- ❖ By promoting free movement of people and goods across borders of the member states..
- ❖ By developing a common currency.

SYMBOLS OF THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY.

- The EAC flag
- The EAC anthem
- The EAC constitution
- The EAC motto
- The EAC emblem

The East African Community Flag



- ➢ The EAC has six colours and an emblem in the middle.
- ➢ The Blue background represents the waters of lake Victoria.
- ➢ White, Black, Green, Yellow, and Red colours are taken from the flags of the EAC member states to signify their cooperation.

Places where the EAC flag can be raised.

- Schools
- Embassies and High Commissions of the Member States
- Airports
- Hospitals
- Public offices

Note:- *The EAC motto is **One People One Destiny**. It encourages unity among people of the EAC.*

Importance of the EAC flag.

- ❖ It promotes regional unity.
- ❖ It promotes regional identity.
- ❖ It promotes patriotism.

The EAC emblem.



- ➢ *A Map of East Africa in the middle of the EAC emblem. It reminds of the EAC cooperation.*
- ➢ *The industrial wheel represents the industrial growth as a common goal in the region.*
- ➢ *The arch of leaves represents the rich vegetation and agricultural production among the member states.*
- ➢ *The hand shake represents unity and friendship among the member states.*
- ➢ *The words "**JUMUIYA YA AFRIKA MASHARIKI**" translated as "East African Community" means the cooperation of the countries of East Africa.*

THE EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY ANTHEM.

- It is called Wimbo wa Jumuiya ya Afrika Mashariki.
- The EAC anthem started to be used on 3rd December 2010.
- It has three stanzas.

- It was composed by;
  - John Mugango from Tanzania.
  - Wasswa Joseph from Uganda.
  - Richard Kadhambi from Kenya.

Occasions where EAC anthem is sung

- School assemblies
- During parliamentary sessions.
- At official ceremonies
- Start of public functions.

Importance of the EAC anthem.

- It promotes regional unity.
- It promotes love for God.
- It promotes friendship among the EAC member states.
- It promotes patriotism and hard work.

EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY ANTHEM

Kiswahili Version	*English Version*
Stanza 1 Ee Mungu twaomba ulinde Jumuiya Afrika Mashariki Tuwezeshe kuishi kwa amani Tutimize na malengo yetu *Chorus* *Jumuiya Yetu sote tuilinde* *Tuwajibike tuimarike* *Umoja wetu ni nguzo yetu* *Idumu Jumuiya yetu.* *Stanza 2* Uzalendo pia mshikamano Viwe msingi wa Umoja wetu Natulinde Uhuru na Amani Mila zetu na desturi zetu. *Stanza 3* Viwandani na hata mashambani Tufanye kazi sote kwa makini Tujitoe kwa hali na mali Tuijenge Jumuiya bora.	*Stanza 1* Oh God we pray For preservation of the East African Community; Enable us to live in peace; May we fulfill our objectives; *Chorus* We should protect/guard our community We should be committed and Stand strong Our unity is our anchor Long live our community *Stanza 2* Patriotism and togetherness Be the pillars of our unity May we guard our independence And peace Our culture and traditions *Stanza 3* Industries and farms We should work together We should work hard We should build a better community.

NATIONAL SYMBOLS OF EACH EAC MEMBER STATE.

UGANDA'S NATIONAL SYMBOLS

THE UGANDA NATIONAL FLAG



- The Uganda National Flag was designed by Grace Ibingira
- The Uganda national flag has three main colours i.e. black ,yellow ,red.
- A crested crane in a white circular background is at the centre of the flag. The white background represents peace.

	➢ **The Uganda national flag promotes national identity.**

Meaning of each colour on the Uganda National Flag.

- **Black represents the dark-skinned people of Uganda. It symbolises the African race of Ugandans.**
- **Yellow represents the abundant sunshine received in Uganda. It also represents the warm climate experienced in Uganda.**
- **Red represents the international brotherhood.**
- **White stands for the peace enjoyed in Uganda.**

THE UGANDA NATIONAL COAT OF ARMS.



- *Uganda coat of arms is composed of a shield and two spears on a green hill with the Uganda kob on the left and the crested crane on the right. It is designed using symbols that summarise important ideas and things Uganda holds.*
- *It is found on official documents, the national currency, parliament, the government seal and the president's official car.*
- *It is also hung in government institutions like courts and offices to symbolise power and authority.*
- *The Uganda coat of arms was designed by* ***Paul Mukasa.***
- *The Uganda coat of arms acts as a public seal of Uganda.*
- *The public seal is used to signify the official nature of government documents that bear its stamp.*

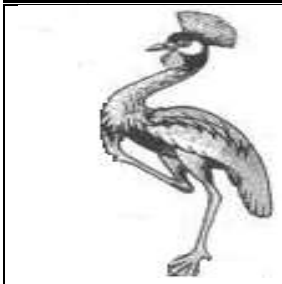
Meaning of features found on the Uganda coat of arms.

- **The spears and shield represents the traditional means of defence.**
- **The blue stripes at the top represents the water bodies in Uganda.**
- **The blue stripes at the bottom of the shield represent the source of River Nile found in Uganda.**
- **The sun represents the abundant sunshine received in Uganda or warm climate experienced in Uganda.**
- **The drum represents the traditional means of communication. It also represents the culture of the people of Uganda.**
- **The black colour on the shield symbolises the African race of Ugandans.**
- **The kob represents the rich/abundant wildlife in Uganda.**
- **The crested crane represents the gentleness and peaceful nature of the people of Uganda.**
- **Coffee and cotton on the green hill show the traditional cash crops grown in Uganda. It also shows that Uganda is an agricultural country.**
- **The green colour represents the abundant vegetation of Uganda.**
- **The green hill represents the many physical features of Uganda.**
- **The national motto "For God and My Country" signifies that the people of Uganda are God fearing.**

THE UGANDA NATIONAL ANTHEM

1. Oh Uganda! may God uphold thee, We lay our future in thy hand. United, free, For liberty Together we'll always stand. 2. Oh Uganda! the land of freedom. Our love and labour we give, And with neighbours all At our country's call In peace and friendship we'll live. 3. Oh Uganda! the land that feeds us By sun and fertile soil grown. For our own dear land, We'll always stand: The Pearl of Africa's Crown.	➢ **"Oh Uganda, land of beauty" is the country's official song. It was composed by George Wilberforce Kakoma.** ➢ **It was first officially sung on independence day on 9th October 1962 by Makerere college school choir, conducted by a student Catherine Mwandha.** ➢ **The Uganda national anthem is sung and played during official functions. It symbolises the country's principles, hopes and goals.** ➢ **The Uganda national anthem has three stanzas . All the three stanzas are sung to open and close official and important functions.** ***NOTE:*** ✓ *If there are other anthems or prayers during a function, the national anthem is sung first, followed by other anthems and then a prayer. At the end of the function, other anthems are sung first and the national anthem is sung last to close the function.* ✓ *The Uganda national anthem promotes national unity.* ✓ *When singing the national anthem, people must stand at attention as a sign of respect.*

The Uganda National Emblem.

	• **The crested crane is the Uganda's national emblem. It signifies the gentleness and peaceful nature of the people of Uganda.** • **Its drawn when it is in motion to show that Uganda is moving forward in terms of development** **Why the crested crane was chosen to be Uganda's national emblem.** • **It is a beautiful bird.** • **It is a gentle bird.** • **It is a graceful bird.** • **It is a peaceful bird.**

THE NATIONAL FLAG AND COAT OF ARMS OF KENYA.







Features on the Kenya national flag and their meaning.	***Features on the Kenya national coat of arms and their meanings.***
➢ *Black colour represents the people of Kenya who are predominant Africans.* ➢ *White colour represents the peace enjoyed in Kenya.* ➢ *Red colour represents the blood that was shed during the struggle for independence.* ➢ *Green colour represents the land and its agricultural potential.* ➢ *Shield and spears represents the traditional weapons and readiness to defend and protect the country.*	➢ *Lions holding spears symbolises the courage, ability and strength of Kenyans to defend their country against external attacks.* ➢ *Cockerel symbolises the party that led Kenya to independence.* ➢ *Shield shows Kenya's readiness to defend her independence.* ➢ *Agricultural products represent Kenya's rich fertile soils.* ➢ *The motto "Harambee" is a call for people to cooperate and work together in building the nation.*

THE NATIONAL FLAG AND COAT OF ARMS OF TANZANIA.







Features of the Tanzania national flag and their meaning	**Features of the Tanzania coat of arms and their meaning.**
• *Black colour represents the African race of Tanzanians.* • *Green colour represents the abundant vegetation and fertile land of Tanzania.* • *Blue colour represents the various lakes, rivers and other water bodies found in Tanzania.* • *Golden colour represents the different minerals and other wealth found in Tanzania.*	• Golden colour represents the numerous minerals and other wealth which are found in Tanzania. • Red colour represents the fertile soils on which different crops are found. • Blue waves represents the different water bodies found in Tanzania. • Burning torch represents the freedom, independence and enlightment of the people of Tanzania. • Spear and shield represents the readiness of Tanzanians to protect and defend their country. • Axe and hoe represent the determination of Tanzania to promote agricultural development. • Cotton and cloves represents the traditional cash crops of Tanzania. They also represent Tanzania as an agricultural country. • Man and woman each holding an elephant tusk: represents the cooperation of Tanzanians to develop their country. • The motto of Tanzania: **"Uhuru na umoja"** means freedom and unity.

THE NATIONAL FLAG AND COAT OF ARMS OF RWANDA.



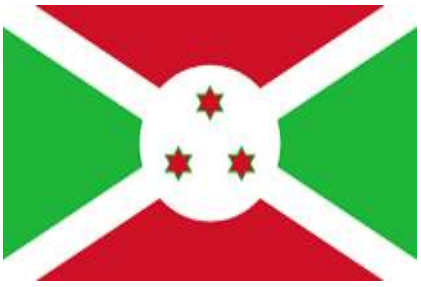




***Features on the Rwanda national flag and their meaning*.**	***Features on the Rwanda national coat of arms and their meaning*.**
• *Blue colour reperesents the peace and happiness enjoyed in Rwanda.* • *Yellow colour represents the economic development and mineral wealth.* • *Green colour represents Rwanda as an agricultural country with abundant vegetation.* • *The sun represents unity and enlightment of the people of Rwanda.*	• *Green ring with a knot represents the determination of Rwandans to develop through hard work.* • *Sorghum and coffee represents the agricultural potential of Rwanda.* • *Basket represents the traditional handcrafts,culture of saving, solidarity and sharing.* • *Cog wheel represents Rwanda's readiness to develop in the field of science,technology and industry.* • *Shields represents the traditional means of defence. They also represent patriotism and the people's readiness to defend the country.* • *The motto of Rwanda **"Ubumwe, Umurimo,Gukunda Iguhugu"** (Unity,work,and patriotism) represents the determination of Rwandans to work together in order to develop their country.*

THE NATIONAL FLAG AND COAT OF ARMS OF BURUNDI.







• ***Features on the Burundi national flag and their meaning*** • *Green colour represents the abundant natural resources in Burundi.* • *White colour represents hope and peace.* • *Red colour represents international brotherhood.* • *The three stars represents the three ethnic groups in Burundi ,the Hutu,Tusti and Batwa.*	• ***Features on the Burundi national coat of arms.*** • *Shield and spears represents the readiness of the people of Burundi to defend and protect their country.* • *National motto: Burundi's motto is in French**."Unite Travail Progres"(**Unity,Work,Progress.): it represents the unity and determination of the Burundians to work hard for the progress of their country.*

THE NATIONAL FLAG AND COAT OF ARMS OF SOUTH SUDAN.







Features on the national flag of South Sudan and their meaning. • *Black colour represents the African race of the people of South Sudan.* • *Red colour represents the blood that was shed in the liberation struggle.* • *Green colour represents the fertile land and natural resources.* • *Blue colour represents the waters of River Nile.* • *Yellow star represents the unity of states making up South South Sudan.*	***Features on the national coat of arms of South Sudan and their meaning.*** • *African fish eagle represents the people's resilience, vision and majesty.* • *Shield and two spears represents the people's readiness to protect their country.* • *The motto: **"Justice, Prosperity and Equality** ." represents the people's aspirations to live in a fair and just society in their country.*

Importance of national symbols

- **They promote national identity. They make countries look different from other countries.(they are used as symbols of identification.)**
- **They promote national unity eg.the anthem.**
- **They promote patriotism among people.**
- **They are used as symbols of independence.**

The neighbouring countries of the EAC

Country	*Capital City*	*Direction*
• Republic of Sudan	• Khartoum	• North
• Mozambique	• Maputo	• South
• Malawi	• Lilongwe	• South
• Democratic Republic of Congo	• Kinshasa	• West
• Ethiopia	• Addis-Ababa	• North West
• Somalia	• Mogadishu	• East
• Central African Republic (C.A.R)	• Bangui	• North West
• Zambia	• Lusaka	• South West



Testing Exercise.

1. Mention the commonest way of telling directions your community.
2. Give any two ways one can be able to locate places on a map.
3. Give the meaning of Lines of latitude.
4. Why are lines of latitude sometimes called "the parallels"?
5. Name the major line of latitude that crosses the East African Community member states.
6. What name is given to the region between the tropic of cancer and tropic of Capricorn?
7. Mention one neighbouring country of Uganda that lies in both the Northern and Southern hemisphere.
8. Why is the equator marked 0^0?
9. Give the meaning of the term Equinox.
10. State the effect of the Revolution of the earth around the sun.
11. Why do people living at Mombasa see the sun earlier than those ones at Kasese?
12. Mention the two months of the year when the sun is always overhead the equator.
13. What causes days and nights?
14. Name the line of longitude which helps in telling the international time.
15. Find the time in Rwanda which is 30^0W if it is 5:00pm in Ghana.
16. Name the British colonial secretary who advocated for the formation of the East African Community.
17. State any three reasons for the formation of the EAC in 1967.
18. Mention the three founder members of the EAC.
19. Name the organisation which was replaced by the EAC.
20. Which common market unites all East African countries?
21. Mention any two departments of the defunct EAC which had their headquarters in Uganda.
22. State any one achievement of the defunct EAC before it collapsed.
23. State any three reasons for the collapse of the EAC in 1977.
24. Give any two ways the collapse of the EAC affected international trade in the region.
25. Name the three heads of state at the time of the collapse of EAC.
26. Mention any two departments of EAC which survived as EAC collapsed in 1967.
27. Why is 30th November, 1999 remembered in the history of East African Community?
28. Name the three heads of state who revived the East African Community.
29. Give any three reasons why the heads of state of East African countries revived the EAC.
30. Mention the newest member state of the East African Community.
31. Give any two reasons why the above country joined the East African Community.
32. State any three ways the people of East Africa benefit from the East African Community.
33. Why is Uganda referred to as a land locked country?
34. Mention any three land locked member states of the East African Community.
35. State any three problems land locked countries like Uganda face.
36. How is Uganda similar to Rwanda in terms of location?
37. Mention any two seaports that handle imports and exports of East African countries.
38. State any one benefit Kenya enjoys over Uganda due to her location.
39. Mention any four organs of the East African Community.
40. State any three problems facing the East African Community.
41. Give any two ways the East African Community member states can solve the above challenges.
42. Give any three ways the East African Community has promoted trade in East Africa.
43. Mention any three symbols of the East African Community.
44. Write down the East African Community motto.

45. What does the blue colour symbolise on the East African Community flag?
46. Mention any two occasions when the East African Community anthem is normally sung.
47. Give the English meaning of the phrase "Jumuiya ya Afrika Mashariki".
48. Give one way a national anthem is important to a country.
49. What do the following features symbolise on the Uganda national coat of arms?
    (i) The Kob
    (ii) The drum
    (iii) Coffee and cotton
    (iv) The sun.
50. Why was the crested crane chosen as Uganda's national emblem?

THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA.

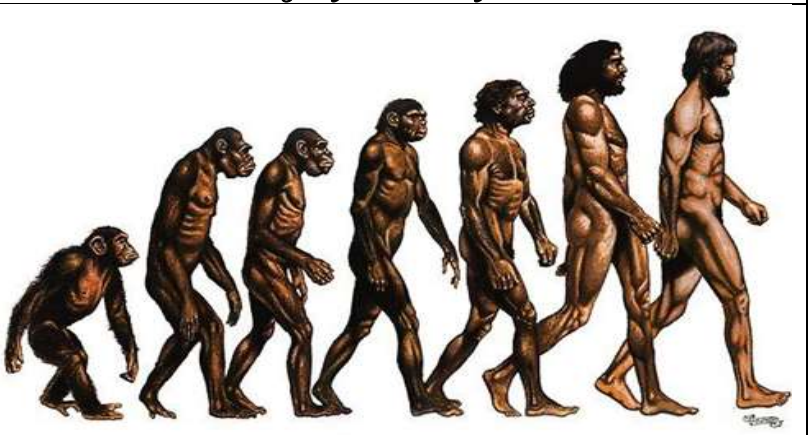
THE ORIGIN OF HUMAN BEINGS.

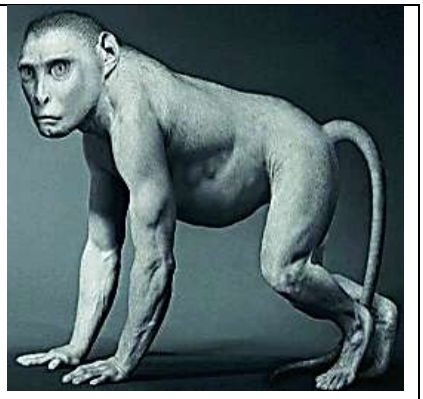
- History is the study of past events.
- History contains what man did, the way he lived, the tools he used and the way he adopted to the environment where he lived.
- It is through history that we can trace the origin of man.

Sources of history.

- Oral traditions
- Written history
- Linguistics
- Anthropology
- Archaeology

Stages of evolution of man





Homo habilis man

a) ORAL TRADITIONS

- Oral history refers to information about the past that is passed on from one generation to another by the word of mouth.
- It is the oldest form of keeping information.

Sources of Oral history.

- Legends
- Riddles
- Proverbs
- Poems
- Songs
- Tongue twisters

Advantages of oral traditions.

- It is cheap in terms of getting information.
- It promotes respect for elders.
- It encourages thinking among people.
- It favours the illiterates and the blind.

Disadvantages of oral traditions.

- Information can easily be changed.
- Information can easily be lost in case a person with information dies.
- Information depends on one's memory.

b) WRITTEN HISTORY

- **This is the information about the past that is put into writing.**
- **The period before written history was referred to as pre-historical period.**

Sources of written history.

- **Textbooks**
- **Newspapers**
- **Magazines**
- **Journals**

Advantages of written history

- **Information can be kept for future use or reference.**
- **Information can not be phased out.**
- **Information can not easily be changed.**
- **It gives the time when the events happened.**

Note: *Written history is the most accurate source of information.*

Disadvantages of written history.

- **It is expensive to record information.**
- **It caters for illiterates only.**
- **Some history may be changed by writers.**
- **It takes a long time to correct wrong information.**

c) LINGUISTICS.

- **This is the study and analysis of languages spoken by different people.**
- **Linguistics can help us tell when and how the languages spoken now in East Africa came into existence.**

d) ANTHROPOLOGY.

- **This is the study of people's culture.**
- **Anthropology is the social science that studies the origins and social relationships of human beings.**
- **Anthropologists give information about cultural systems like the ideas, beliefs and institutions.**

e) ARCHAEOLOGY.

- **This is the scientific study of remains of people of long ago.**
- **It is carried out by archaeologists.**

Terms related to archaeology.

Fosils are remains of animals, plants and of humans of long ago.

Examples of fossils.

- **Skulls of People**
- **Bones of animals and people**
- **Caves**
- **Rock paintings**
- **Tools**
- **Weapons**

- **Excavation is the process of digging up the remains of early man. After excavation the remains are carbon dated to determine their age.**
- **Carbon dating is the arrangement of the fossils to determine their age.**
- **Stratification is the grouping of fossils and arte-facts according to the depth of the ground where they are found.**
- **Arte-facts are remains of items used by people of long ago.**

Places where fossils and arte-facts are found.

- **Museums**
- **archaeological sites.**

Famous archaeologists in East Africa.



Dr. Louis Leakey

a) Dr.Louis Leakey.

- **He is the most prominent archaeologist in East Africa.**
- **He came to East Africa with his wife Mary Leakey.**
- **Dr.Louis Leakey discovered the oldest skull of man at Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania in 1959.**
- **This skull was believed to be for a man he named Zinjanthropus.**
- **The name Zinjanthropus is formed by two words;ie."Zenj" which means black and "anthropus" which means man.**
- **Therefore, the name "Zinjanthropus" means black man.**

Note: *East Africa is therefore referred to as the cradle of mankind because the oldest skull of man was discovered in East Africa.*

b) Dr. Merrick Posnansky.

- **He made his discoveries in the former Chwezi empire at Bigobyamugenyi in Sembabule district.**

c) Dr. Peter Schmidt.

- **He carried out his discoveries in the iron age sites in Northern Tanzania around the shores of Lake Victoria.**

d) James.S Kirkman and Neville Chittick.

- **He carried out archaeological work along the coast of East Africa(in the Zenj empire)**
- **They excavated the remains of the Portuguese along the coast of East Africa.**

e) Dr.Richard Leakey.

- **He discovered the remains of early man around lake Turkana in Kenya.**
- **He was a son to Louis and Mary Leakey.**

Importance/ advantages of archaeology.

- **It is a source of employment to people.**
- **It helps us to know the life style of our ancestors.**
- **It helps us to know the origin of mankind.**

Problems facing archaeology.

- **Shortage of funds to facilitate the activities..**
- **Difficulty in locating sites for effective excavation.**
- **Shortage of skilled labour.**

MUSEUMS.

- **A museum is a building where things of art, culture and history are kept for public viewing.**

Examples of museums in East Africa.

Country	*Name of museum*
Uganda	-Uganda museum at Kitante -Kabale museum
Tanzania	-Dar-es-salaam -Arusha museum.
Kenya	-Nairobi museum -Fort Jesus
Rwanda	-Butare museum -Ruhengeri museum.
Burundi	-Burundi geological museum -Gitega museum.
South Sudan	-National Archive museum.

Importance of museums in a country.

- **They create market for local craft materials.**
- **They provide employment to the people.**
- **They attract tourists who bring in foreign exchange.**
- **The are used for research and education purpose.**

❖ They keep arte-facts safe.

ARCHAEOLOGICAL /HISTORICAL SITES IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Archaeological sites are places where the remains of early/people of long ago were discovered.**
- **Most archaeological sites in East Africa are found near lakes and rivers.**

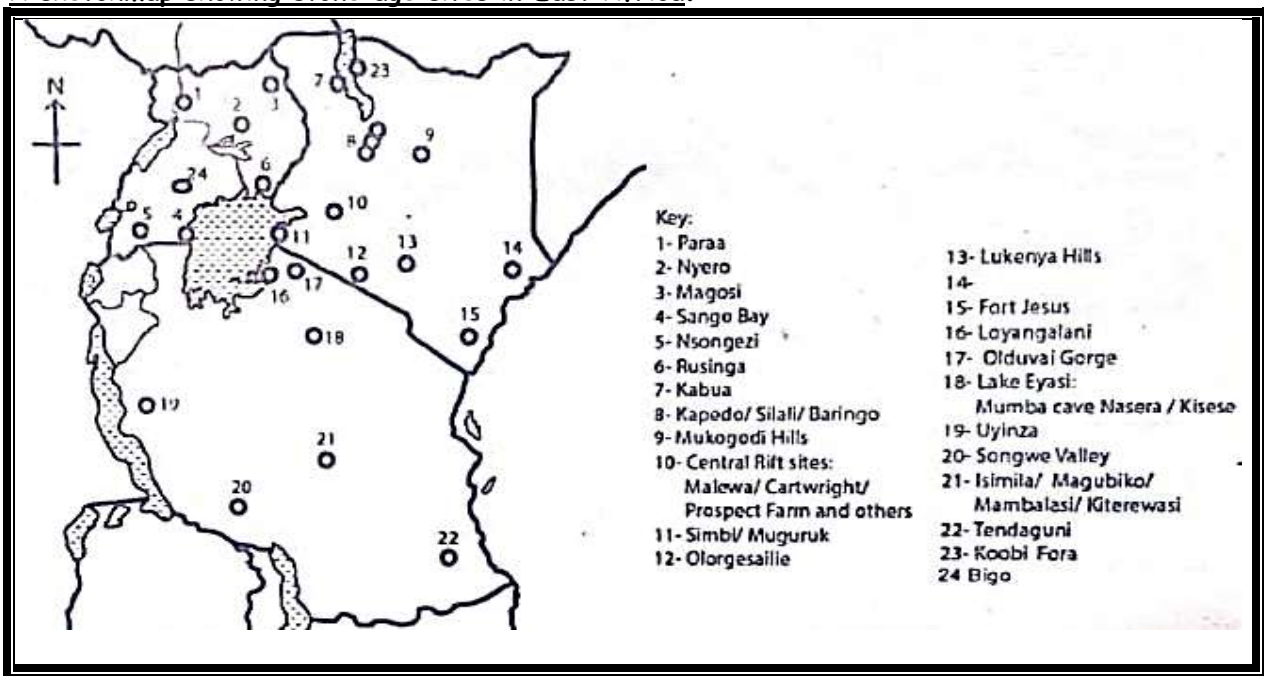
Reasons why most archaeological sites are found near lakes and rivers.

❖ Early man lived near lakes and rivers in order to get water.
❖ Early man lived near lakes and rivers to trap animals that came to drink water.
❖ Early man lived near lakes and rivers in order to get fish.

Famous archaeological sites in East Africa.

Country	*Archaeological site.*
Tanzania	-Olduvai Gorge -Apis Rock -Cheke -Kisese -Isimila -Lake Eyasi-Kondoa
Uganda	-Bigobyamugenyi -Paraa -Sango bay -Nyere rock paintings -Magosi -Ntusi.
Kenya	-Rusinga island -Kanjera -Yala Alego -Olorgesaile -Kanana -Kariandusi -Lewa.
Rwanda	-Nyungwe forest.

A sketchmap showing stone age sites in East Africa.



Ways archaeologists found places of fossils (archaeological sites).

- **By digging unusual bumps and hollows on the ground.**
- **By recognising the footmarks and pieces of pottery.**
- **By chance.**
- **Ordinary people could find remains during their activities.**

Importance of archaeological/historical/stone age sites.

❖ They attract tourists who bring in income.
❖ They provide employment to people.
❖ They promote culture in the society.
❖ The are used for research and study purpose.
❖ They help people trace their origin.
❖ They help us to know how our ancestors lived. The activities that were carried out by early man.

THE STONE AGE

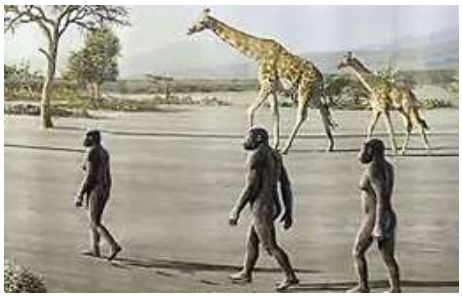
- Stone age was the period when man used stones to make his tools.
- The stone age period was called so because early man made his tools out of stones.
- Man was called the stone age man because man made his tools out of stones.

Stages of development during the stone age.

- Old/ Early/ Palaeolithic Stage.
- Middle/ Mesolithic/ Period.
- Late/ New/ Neolithic Period.

The Old Stone age.

- This was the first stage of stone age.
- It is also called Palaeolithic/ early stone age.



The Old stone age man

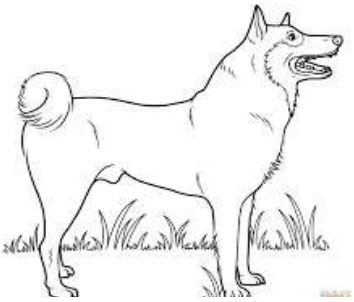
Characteristics of early man in the Old stone age.

- Man had no permanent home.
- He moved naked.
- Man had a hairy body.
- He used simple tools out of stones.
- Man lived a wondering life.
- Man had huge molar teeth for grinding hard food.

➢ ***Note:-The discovery of fire*** *marked the end of the Old stone age and the beginning of the Middle stone age.*

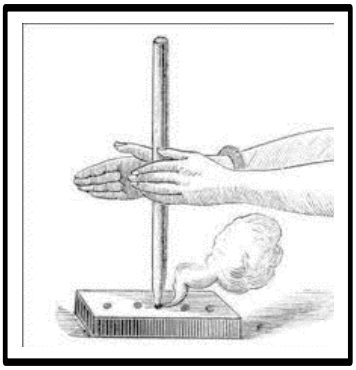
The Middle stone age.

- Early man started it with the discovery of fire. He rubbed a dry stick into a hole in a dry piece of wood. As a result of friction, fire was produced.
- The Middle stone age is also called the Mesolithic.



Charactreristics of early man in the Middle stone age.

- Man started using better tools.
- Man started eating roasted meat.
- Man started living in caves.
- Man tamed a dog for hunting and protection.
- Man started hunting animals using traps.
- Man started using skins as blankets.



Ways fire was useful to early man.

- Fire was used for protection against wild animals.
- Fire was used for roasting meat.
- Fire provided light in caves.
- Fire provided warmth to early man in caves.
- Fire was used for boiling poison.
- Fire helped man to harden his tools.

Note: ***The discovery of farming*** *marked the end of the Middle stone age and the beginning of the New stone age.*

The New stone age.

- Early man started it with the discovery of farming.
- It is also called the late stone age/ Neolithic.

Characteristics of early man in the New stone age.

- Early man started to live in simple huts.
- Early man started living in communities.
- Early man started carrying out farming.
- Early man lived a settled life.

Note: *Farming enabled early man live a settled life because he had to settle and take care of his crops.*

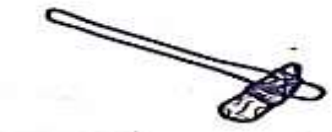
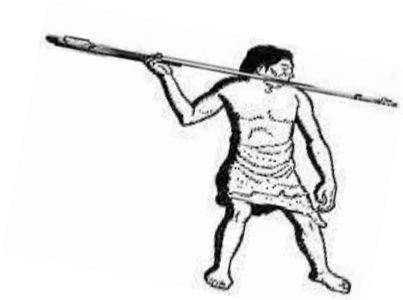
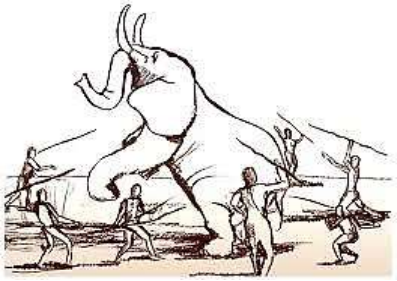
Ways early man obtained/got his food.

a) By hunting.
b) By gathering fruits.
c) By collecting wild honey.
d) By fishing.

Examples of early man's food.

- **Wild honey**
- **Fruits**
- **Fish**
- **Raw meat**

Examples of early man's tools and their uses.

Name of tool	*Drawing*	*Use of the tool to early man*
Bolas		❖ **It was used to trap fast running animals during hunting**
Hand axe		❖ **It was used for skinning animals.** ❖ **For digging up plant roots.**
Hand spears		❖ **It was used for hunting** 
Bone needle		❖ **It was used for stitching animal skins and hides to make clothes**
Cleaver		❖ **It was used for chopping meat**
Wooden club		❖ **It was used for killing trapped animals**
Bow and arrow		❖ **It was used for hunting and fishing**

Note: ***The discovery of Iron smelting*** *marked the end of Stone age period and the beginning of Iron age.*

THE IRON AGE.

- This was the period when early man started using iron to make his tools.
- Iron smelting was started by the Cushites at Meroe in Ethiopia.
- It was introduced in East Africa by the Bachwezi.
- Blacksmithing is the act of making and repairing iron tools.
- A blacksmith is a person who makes iron tools.

Tools made from iron by blacksmiths.

- Knives
- Pangas
- Hoe
- Spears
- Axe
- Sickle
- Saucepans
- Weaving needles
- Arrows.

				
a panga	*a knife*	*a sickle*	*a hoe*	*a gun*

How iron smelting changed the life of early man.

- It has enabled man to make better tools for farming .This increased food production.
- It has enabled early man make better weapons for defence.
- It has helped man to make better means of transport.
- It has enabled early man to make better fishing tools.

ETHNIC GROUPS IN EAST AFRICA.

- An ethnic group is a large group of people with the same origin, same traditional occupation and speak related languages.
- An ethnic group can also be known as a tribal group.
- A tribe is a group of people who have the same origin and speak the same language.
- The Bushmen were the early inhabitants of East Africa before the coming of ethnic groups into East Africa. The Bushmen were displaced as a result of the ethnic migrations.
- The direct descendants of the Bushmen in East Africa are the Sandawe and Hadza in Northern Tanzania, the Pygmies in Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.
- The first ethnic group to migrate into East Africa were the Cushites/Hamites.

Problems faced by ethnic groups during their migrations.

- Attacks from hostile tribes.
- They were attacked by dangerous animals.
- Difficulty in crossing terrains.
- Shortage of water and pasture.
- Attacks from tropical diseases.

Major ethnic groups that came into East Africa.

Ethnic group	*Cradle land (place of origin)*	*occupation*
Bantu	Cameroon highlands	Cultivation
River-Lake Nilotes(Nilotics)	Bahr-el-Ghazal	Pastoralism
Cushites (Hamites)	Ethiopia	Pastoralism
Plain Nilotes (Nilo-Hamites)	Ethiopian highlands	Pastoralism
Highland Nilotes	Ethiopian highlands	Pastoralism
Sudanic people	Juba (South Sudan)	Mixed farming.

Characteristics of Ethnic groups.

- ❖ People speak related languages.
- ❖ People have the same origin.
- ❖ People carry out the same major occupation.

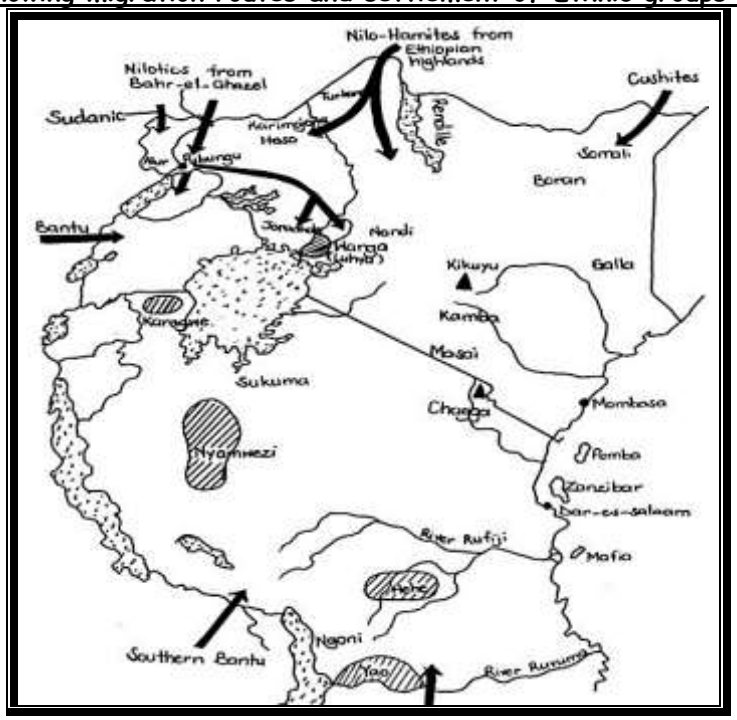
Factors that affected settlement patterns of ethnic groups into East Africa..

- ❖ Climate
- ❖ Availability of land.
- ❖ Water bodies
- ❖ Nature of the Soil
- ❖ Vegetation
- ❖ Occupation

How the above factors influenced the settlement patterns of Ethnic groups in East Africa.

- ❖ **Climate:**
  Most people settled in areas with favourable climate for their traditional; occupation. Areas that receive much rainfall attracted the cultivators while areas that receive low rainfall attracted cattle keepers.
- ❖ **Nature of the soils:**
  The Bantu who were cultivators settled in the interlacustrine region which had fertile soils for crop growing.
- ❖ **Land:**
  Most ethnic groups migrated into East Africa to acquire enough land for growing crops and rearing animals.
- ❖ **Vegetation:**
  Most pastoral tribes settled in areas with savannah vegetation to get pasture for their animals.
- ❖ **Water bodies:**
  Most tribal groups settled around water bodies in order to get water for home use, for their animals and to carryout fishing.
- ❖ **Occupation :**
  Most ethnic groups in East Africa settled in areas that were suitable for their traditional occupation eg.the Bantu settled in areas that had fertile soils and received reliable rainfall which support crop growing, the Nilotics were pastoralists which made them settle in areas that had plenty of pasture for their animals.

A sketch map showing migration routes and settlement of Ethnic groups into East Africa.



THE BANTU.

- The Bantu forms the largest ethnic group in East Africa.
- The Bantu are called so because they speak related languages with a common suffix "ntu" when referring to people or things.
- The Bantu originated from Cameroon highlands.
- Their major occupation is cultivation/ crop growing..
- They settled in the interlacustrine region in East Africa.

➢ N.B: ***Interlacustrine region*** *is an area between the great lakes of East Africa.*

Examples of interlacustrine lakes.

- Lake Victoria
- Lake Tanganyika
- Lake Kivu
- Lake Edward
- Lake Albert.

Reasons why the Bantu settled in interlacustrine region.

- ❖ The area had fertile soils suitable for cultivation.
- ❖ The area received reliable rainfall that favour the growing of crops.
- ❖ The area had also had weak inhabitants ie. the Bushmen.

Bantu groups that migrated to East Africa.

a) The Western Bantu.

- This was the first group of Bantu to enter East Africa. They entered East Africa through the West between Lake Albert and Lake Edward.

Tribes under the Western Bantu.

Country of settlement	Bantu tribe
Uganda	Baganda, Banyankole, Bakonzo, Bamba, Bagwere, Bakiga, Bagishu, Batooro, Banyoro, Bafumbira.
Kenya	Abaluhya , Maragoli, Gusii.

b) The Highland and Coastal Bantu (Eastern Bantu).

- This Bantu group settled around Mountain Kenya, Mountain Kilimanjaro and the coast of East Africa.

Tribes under the Eastern Bantu

Country of settlement	Bantu tribe
Kenya	Kikuyu, Akamba, Taita, Mijikenda,Embu, Meru, Pokomo.
Tanzania	Chagga, Tareta, Zaramo, Washamba.

c) The Western Tanzanian Bantu.

- They entered East Africa through Tanzania between Lake Tanganyika and Lake Kivu and settled mainly in Tanzania. They include the Nyamwezi, Sukuma, Baziba, Gogo.

d) The Southern Bantu.

- They entered East Africa through the South West between Lake Tanganyika and Lake Nyasa (Lake Malawi).
- They mainly settled in Tanzania. They include ; Yao, Hehe, Makonde, Makua, Fipa, Pogoro and Mwera.

THE NGONI.

- The Ngoni was the last group of the Bantu to enter East Africa.
- The Ngoni came from South Africa .
- The Ngoni used the Southern route to enter East Africa.
- The Ngoni were led by chief Zwangendaba. They were running away from the wars of Shaka the king of the Zulu kingdom in South Africa, who attacked them.

Note:

- ✓ ***The dominant Bantu*** *tribe in Rwanda and Burundi are the* ***Hutu.***
- ✓ ***Baganda*** *is the largest Bantu tribe in Uganda .*
- ✓ ***The Kikuyu*** *is the largest Bantu tribe in Kenya.*
- ✓ ***The Sukuma*** *are the largest Bantu tribe in Tanzania.*

Bantu tribes that settled on slopes of mountains in East Africa.

Mountain	*Bantu tribe*
Mountain Rwenzori	Bakonzo
Mountain Mufumbiro	Bafumbira , Bakiga
Mountain Elgon	Bagishu
Mountain Kilimanjaro	Chagga
Mountain Kenya	Kikuyu

Causes of the Bantu migrations.

- ❖ Outbreak of epidemic diseases in their cradleland.
- ❖ Internal and external conflicts.
- ❖ The need for fertile land for cultivation.
- ❖ Outbreak of famine.
- ❖ Shortage of land.
- ❖ Over population in their cradle land.
- ❖ Prolonged drought.

Reasons for the migrations of the Bantu into East Africa.

- ❖ They were looking for water and pasture for their animals.
- ❖ They were escaping from external attacks.
- ❖ They were escaping from epidemic diseases which attacked them.
- ❖ To look for areas that received reliable rainfall. .
- ❖ To look for enough land to carry out cultivation.
- ❖ To look for fertile soils for crop cultivation.

Effects of Bantu migrations into East Africa.

a) Positive effects.

- ❖ They introduced new crops.
- ❖ They introduced new languages.
- ❖ They introduced new cultures.
- ❖ They introduced new farming systems.
- ❖ They formed kingdoms and chiefdoms where they settled.

b) Negative effects.

- ❖ They displaced people where they settled ie. The Bushmen. They moved southwards and settled in the Kalahari desert)
- ❖ Their intermarriages led to loss of culture of the early inhabitants.
- ❖ Population increased in areas where they settled.
- ❖ They caused wars and conflicts in areas where they settled.

THE NILOTES.

The Nilotes are called so because they had their origin along the Nile valley.
The Nilotes are divided into three sub groups
Namely;

- The River-Lake Nilotes.
- The Highland Nilotes.
- The Plain Nilotes/ Nilo-Hamites.

THE RIVER- LAKE NILOTES.

- They are also called the Nilotics/Luo speakers.
- They are called Luo speakers because they speak Luo as their language.
- They migrated from Bahr-el-Ghazal in South Sudan.
- The Nilotics are sometimes referred to as River-Lake Nilotes because they settled near lakes and rivers.
- The Nilotics entered into East Africa from Northern Uganda.
- The Nilotics first settled at Pubungu when they first reached Uganda.
- Pubungu currently is known as Pakwach.
- The Nilotics were led by Olum and his two sons Gipir and Labongo.
- The two brothers separated at Pubungu due to misunderstandings over the spear and the bead.

The Separation of the River-Lake Nilotes.

- ✓ The first group led by Gipir settled in the West Nile. They intermarried with the Lendu leading to the rise of the Alur tribe.
- ✓ The second group moved to areas North of lake Kyoga and settled there and these form the Acholi tribe.
- ✓ Another group moved southwards to Bunyoro. They were led by Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga. They intermarried with the Babiito clan and formed the Luo-Babiito dynasty.
- ✓ The last group moved eastwards, they formed the Jopadhola in Tororo district.
- ✓ Another group continued to Western Kenya forming the Jaluo tribe.

The Sub-groups under the Jaluo.

- Jok-omolo
- Jok-owiny
- Jok-ojok

Tribes under the River-Lake Nilotes/ Luo speakers in East Africa.

- Alur
- Jaluo in Kenya.
- Jopadhola
- Acholi (the largest tribe under the Nilotics).

Effects of the migration of the Nilotes.

a) Positive effects.

- ❖ They introduced Luo language where they settled.
- ❖ The number of domestic animals increased in East Africa.
- ❖ They formed chiefdoms where they settled.
- ❖ They introduced new crops such as millet, sorghum, and sweet potatoes in East Africa.
- ❖ They founded the Luo-Biito dynasty.
- ❖ They introduced new culture like pet names and Luo languages.

b) Negative effects.

- ❖ They displaced people where they settled.
- ❖ The Luo invasion led to collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
- ❖ Population increased where they settled which resulted into shortage of land.

THE PLAIN NILOTES/ NILO-HAMITES.

- They originated from the Ethiopian highlands.
- Their traditional occupation is pastoralism.
- They entered East Africa through the North around lake Turkana.
- They entered Uganda through the North East.
- They settled in the semi-arid areas of East Africa.
- In Uganda, they settled in the North Eastern part.
- The Plain Nilotes today in Uganda settle in districts like Nakapiripirit, Moroto, Soroti, Katakwi, Kumi, Abim, Kaabong.

Reasons why the Plain Nilotes settled in plain areas.

- **The areas were large without people.**
- **The areas were free from vectors like tsetse flies.**
- **The areas were free from tsetse flies.**

Tribes under the Plain Nilotes in East Africa.

Country	*Tribe*
Uganda	Karimojong, Iteso, Langi, Jie, Kumam.
Kenya	Turkana, Masai,Samburu.
Tanzania	Masai, Barabaig, Tatoga.

Reasons why some tribes of the plain Nilotes changed to mixed farming.

- ❖ **They had settled in areas with fertile soils good for growing.**
- ❖ **The areas where they settled received reliable rainfall.**
- ❖ **They were influenced by the Bantu cultivators who were their neighbours.**

THE HIGHLAND NILOTES.

- **They were originally pastoralists.**
- **They originated from Ethiopian highlands and they settled around Mountain Elgon and Western highlands of Kenya.**

Tribes under the Highland Nilotes.

Tribe	*Country*
-Sabiny -Pokot	Uganda
-Tugen -Nandi -Kipsigis -Marakwet etc	Kenya
-Dadong	Tanzania

Cause of the migrations of the Nilotes into East Africa.

- ❖ **Shortage of pasture for animals.**
- ❖ **Internal and external attacks.**
- ❖ **Outbreak of epidemic diseases.**
- ❖ **High population which led to shortage of land.**
- ❖ **Prolonged drought in their cradle land.**
- ❖ **Outbreak of famine in their cradle land.**

Reasons for the migrations of the Nilotes into East Africa.

- ❖ **They were looking for water and pasture for their animals.**
- ❖ **They were escaping from external attacks.**
- ❖ **They were escaping from epidemic diseases which attacked them.**
- ❖ **To look for enough land to carryout pastoralism..**
- ❖ **Outbreak of animal diseases.**

THE CUSHITES/ HAMITES.

- **They are believed to have come from Asia and settled in countries found in the Horn of Africa. ie.Ethiopia, Somalia, Djibouti, and Eritrea.**
- **It was the first ethnic group to come into East Africa.**
- **They originated from Ethiopia into East Africa.**
- **In Uganda,the Hamites entered from the South West direction.**

Tribes under the Cushites/ Hamites in East Africa.

Tribe	*Country*
-Bahima -Tutsi -Bahinda	Uganda
-Tutsi	Rwanda
-Tutsi	Burundi

-Kinje -Somali -Boran -Galla -Rendille.	Kenya
-Mbugu -Iragu	Tanzania

Causes of the migrations of the Cushites into East Africa.

- ❖ Prolonged drought in their cradle land.
- ❖ External attacks from their neighbours.
- ❖ Internal conflicts among the Cushites.
- ❖ Outbreak of epidemic diseases in their cradle land.
- ❖ Shortage of pasture for their animals.
- ❖ Outbreak of famine in their cradle land.
- ❖ Shortage of land in their cradle land.

Reasons for the migratinons of the Cushites into East Africa.

- ❖ To look for water for their animals.
- ❖ To look for pasture for their animals.
- ❖ To look for enough land to carryout pastoralism.
- ❖ To look for safe areas from pests and diseases.

Effects for the coming of Cushites into East Africa.

- ❖ The Cushites introduced long horned cattle.
- ❖ The Cushites displaced people where they settled.
- ❖ The Cushites increased population in East Africa.
- ❖ They introduced the idea of iron smelting in East Africa.

THE SUDANIC PEOPLE.

- The Sudanic people are believed to have migrated from Juba in South Sudan.
- They settled in the West-Nile sub-region of Uganda.
- They carried out mixed farming.

Tribes under the Sudanic in East Africa.

- Lugbara
- Okebu
- Madi
- Lendu

Problems faced by Ethnic groups during their migrations.

- ❖ Attacks from hostile people.
- ❖ Attacks from wild animals.
- ❖ Shortage of food and water.
- ❖ Difficulty in crossing some physical features e.g. rivers.
- ❖ Walking long and tiresome journeys.
- ❖ Attacks from tropical diseases.

MIGRATIONS AND SETTLEMENT PATTERNS IN EAST AFRICA.

- Migration is the movement of people with property from one place to another for settlement.

Types of migration.

- External migration.
- Internal migration.

(i) EXTERNAL MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one country to another for settlement.

Forms of external migration.

- Emigration.
- Immgration.

- ✓ Emigration is the process by which a person leaves his/ her own country and goes to live permanently in another country.
- ✓ An emigrant is a person who leaves his/her own country and goes to live permanently in another country.
- ✓ Immigration is the process by which a person comes to live permanently in a country that is not his/ hers.
- ✓ An immigrant is a person who comes to live permanently in a country which is not his/hers.

Causes of immigration and emigration.

- Civil wars/ internal conflicts.
- Shortage of land.
- Need for better social services.
- Marriage bondage.
- Unemployment.
- To invest their excess capital.
- Job transfers.

Effects of immigration and emigration.

- It leads to population increase in areas of settlement.
- It leads to introduction of new languages.
- It leads to intermarriages among people.
- It leads to land shortage in areas of settlement.
- It leads to introduction of new culture.
- It leads to large labour force in new areas of settlement.

Reasons why people leave their own countries to settle in others permanently.

- To look for better paying jobs.
- To look for areas that are free from wars.
- To look for enough land.
- To look for better social services.
- To look for trade opportunities.

(ii)INTERNAL MIGRATION.

- Internal migration is the movement of people with their property from one part of a country to another for better settlement.
- The migrant remains within his own country.

Forms of internal migration.

- Rural-urban migration.
- Urban-rural migration.
- Rural-rural migration.
- Urban-urban migration.

RURAL-URBAN MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from villages to towns looking for better settlement.

Causes of Rural-Urban migration.

- Unemployment in villages.
- Poor health services.
- Poor transport systems in villages.
- Poor education services in villages
- Job transfers from villages to towns.
- Internal conflicts.
- Insecurity in villages

Reasons why people move from villages to towns.

- To look for better paying jobs.
- To look for better education services.
- To look for a large market for their goods.
- To get access to/enjoy social amenities like electricity and piped water.
- To look for better health services.
- To look for wider market for their goods.
- To run away from dangerous cultural practices like Female Genital Mutilation.

Effects of Rural-Urban migration.

- It leads to depopulation in rural areas which reduces market for goods in rural areas.
- It leads to shortage of labour in villages.
- It leads to low food production.
- It leads to high crime rate in towns.
- It leads to a high rate of unemployment in urban areas.

Ways in which the government can reduce rural-urban migration.

- By setting up industries in rural areas to create jobs for people.
- By extending electricity to villages (rural electrification).
- By improving the social service delivery in villages.

❖ By encouraging people in villages to start up small- scale industries.

Note:-***Rural electrification*** *is the extension of electricity to rural areas.*

Problems faced by people living in urban centres/ towns.

- High crime rate.
- Congestion/traffic jam.
- Easy spread of communicable diseases.
- Poor housing facilities e.g.slums.
- High rate of unemployment.
- High cost of living.
- Poor sanitation.

Reasons why urban centres/ towns are densely populated.

❖ They have better paying jobs.
❖ They have better education services.
❖ They have better social amenities.
❖ They have better health services.
❖ They have better business opportunities.

URBAN -RURAL MIGRATION

- Urban-rural migration is the movement of people with their property from towns to villages for better settlement.

Causes of Urban-Rural migration.

❖ Insecurity in towns.
❖ High costs of living in towns.
❖ Retirement from jobs in towns.
❖ Outbreak of epidemic diseases in towns.
❖ Job transfers from towns to villages.
❖ Need for large vacant land for crop growing.
❖ Unemployment in towns.

Reasons why people move from towns to villages.

❖ To look for land for farming.
❖ To extend their businesses to villages.
❖ To get market for their goods.
❖ To look for areas which are free from natural disasters.
❖ To look for areas with low costs of living.

Effects of Urban-Rural migration.

❖ It leads to shortage of labour in towns.
❖ It leads to shortage of market for goods in towns.
❖ It leads to land shortage in villages.
❖ It leads to population increase in villages.

Ways the government can encourage Urban-Rural migration.

❖ By extending electricity to rural areas (Rural electrification)
❖ By encouraging the setting up of small scale industries in villages.
❖ By building better hospitals in villages.
❖ By constructing better schools in villages.
❖ By providing better security in villages.

URBAN-URBAN MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one town to another looking for better settlement.

Causes of Urban-Urban migration.

❖ Job transfers from one town to another.
❖ Low market for goods.
❖ Insecurity in some towns.
❖ High costs of living in some towns.
❖ Poor sanitation in some towns.
❖ Natural disasters in some towns eg.floods.

Reasons why people move from one town to another.

❖ To look for better jobs.
❖ To look for a large market for their goods.
❖ To look for better security services.
❖ To invest their capital in other towns.
❖ To look for towns which are free from natural disasters.

Effects of Urban-Urban migration.

- ❖ It leads to population increase in new towns where people settle.
- ❖ It leads to shortage of market where they leave.
- ❖ It leads to shortage of labour where they leave.
- ❖ It leads to shortage of land in the new areas of settlement.

RURAL-RURAL MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one village to another looking for better settlement.

Causes of Rural-Rural migration.

- ❖ Social conflicts.
- ❖ Soil infertility in some villages.
- ❖ Insecurity in some villages.
- ❖ Shortage of water and pasture.
- ❖ Shortage of land.
- ❖ Outbreak of epidemic diseases.

Reasons why people move from one village to another.

- ❖ To look for fertile soils for crop growing.
- ❖ To look for water and pasture for animals.
- ❖ To run away from social conflicts.
- ❖ To look for areas with better security.
- ❖ To look for areas which are free from epidemic diseases.
- ❖ To look for areas which are free from natural disasters.

Effects of Rural-Rural migration.

- ❖ It leads to conflicts with the inhabitants of the places they migrate to.
- ❖ It leads to intermarriages.
- ❖ It leads to introduction of new cultures.
- ❖ It leads to low population in places where people migrate from.
- ❖ It leads to introduction of new languages where people settle.

How do people in Urban areas benefit from those living in Rural areas.

- ❖ People in urban areas get food from villages.
- ❖ People in villages provide market for goods produced in towns.
- ❖ Industries in towns get raw materials from villages.

Problems faced by people living in urban areas/ towns.

- ❖ Congestion of people in towns.
- ❖ High crime rate.
- ❖ Sound pollution.
- ❖ Development of slums.
- ❖ High cost of living.
- ❖ Traffic jam.
- ❖ Unemployment among people.

Possible solutions to the above problems.

- ❖ Deploying more security officers to improve security.
- ❖ By building storeyed houses.
- ❖ By constructing wider roads in towns.
- ❖ By building flyovers and foot paths.
- ❖ By teaching people the dangers of poor sanitation.
- ❖ By installing/putting security cameras on houses and along the roads.

Ways people in Rural areas benefit from people in Urban areas.

- People in towns provide market for food from villages.
- They provide rural areas with goods produced in towns.
- People in towns provide farm inputs to farmers in villages eg.insecticides, fertilizers

Problems faced by people in rural areas.

- ❖ Poor health services.
- ❖ Poor transport system.
- ❖ Low electric power supply.
- ❖ Shortage of safe water.
- ❖ Poor education services.
- ❖ Poor housing facilities.

Possible solution to the problems faced by people in rural areas.

- **By constructing better roads in rural areas.**
- **By starting up small scale industries.**
- **By extending electricity to rural areas/ by promoting rural electrification.**
- **By setting up better health centres in villages.**
- **By building better schools in rural areas.**

Effects of migrations today.

- **It leads to population increase in areas where people settle.**
- **It leads to population decrease in areas where people migrate from.**
- **It leads to loss of culture.**
- **It leads to brain drain.**
- **It promotes the spreading of communicable diseases.**

Note:-*Brain drain* *is the movement of highly trained/ qualified people from one country to another for settlement.*

***Causes of brain drain*.**

- *Underpayment.*
- *Political instability as a result of civil wars.*
- *Seeking for higher education.*
- *Search for employment opportunities.*

SETTLEMENT PATTERNS IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Settlement pattern is the distribution of people in an area.**
- **The settlement patterns in East Africa vary from one area to another.**
- **Some areas in East Africa have houses built close to one another, some have scattered houses while others have houses that were built following a line.**

Types of settlement patterns.

(i) Linear settlement pattern

- ✓ **Houses are built along a line eg. besides a major road, railway line.**

Factors that lead to linear settlement pattern.

- **Presence of a transport line eg.a road, railway etc**
- **Presence of a river to provide water.**
- **Presence of a coast line which has fishing ground.**

(ii) Nucleated settlement pattern/ clustered settlement pattern

- ✓ **Houses are built close to one another.**
- ✓ **It is common in areas where people own small pieces of land eg. in urban areas, housing estates and accommodation for workers.**

Factors for a Nucleated settlement pattern.

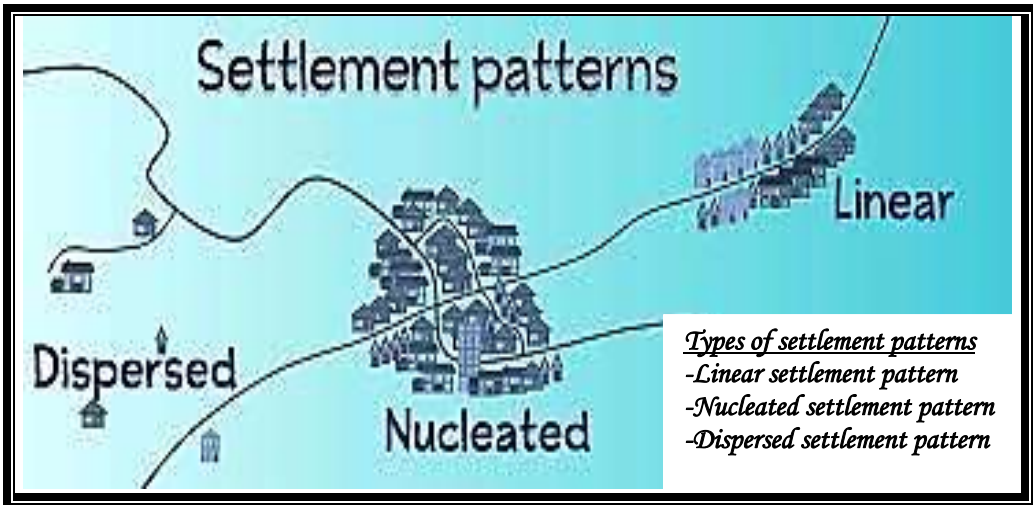
- **Presence of better social services eg. health service, education service etc.**
- **Shortage of land in an area.**
- **Presence of fertile soils in an area.**
- **Presence of natural resources eg. minerals**
- **Improved peace and security.**

(iii) Dispersed settlement pattern/ Scattered settlement pattern.

- ✓ **Houses are scattered over a very large area.**
- ✓ **It is common in areas where people own big pieces of land eg. in rural areas.**

Factors that lead to a Dispersed settlement pattern.

- **Presence of large land.**
- **Poor infertile soils.**
- **Presence of pests and diseases.**
- **Presence of disease vectors.**
- **Presence of steep slopes.**



Types of settlement patterns
-Linear settlement pattern
-Nucleated settlement pattern
-Dispersed settlement pattern

POLITICAL ORGANISATION OF DIFFERENT ETHNIC GROUPS IN EAST AFRICA.

- Political organisation refers to the different ways the people govern themselves.

Ways the people of East Africa were politically organised.

- Through kingdoms.
- Through chiefdoms.
- Through clan systems.
- Through empires.

BUNYORO-KITARA EMPIRE.

- This was the earliest kingdom to be formed in East Africa. It was called an empire because it was too large, covering a large area.
- The founders (first occupants) of Bunyoro-Kitara empire were the Batembuzi.
- It was founded by Ruhanga and his brother Nkya.
- The Batembuzi formed a ruling dynasty called the Tembuzi dynasty.
- The Batembuzi were believed to be demi-gods because they could perform miracles.
- Isaza was the last ruler of the Batembuzi.
- The Tembuzi dynasty came to an end after king Isaza was locked underground by the underground king Nyamiyonga.
- The Batembuzi were succeeded by the Bachwezi.

The Chwezi dynasty.

- It was formed by the Bachwezi.
- The Bachwezi are believed to have originated from Ethiopia into East Africa.
- Ndahura was the first king of the Bachwezi.
- Ndahura founded the Chwezi dynasty.
- Wamala was the last king of the Bachwezi.

Note:-***A dynasty*** *is a series of leaders who belong to the same family.*

Contributions of the Bachwezi in east Africa.

a) **Political contributions.**

- The Bachwezi introduced a centralized monarchy.
- The Bachwezi introduced the idea of building reed palaces.
- The Bachwezi introduced royal regalia.
- They introduced the idea of digging ditches for protection against enemies.

b) **Social contributions.**

- They introduced local chess (mweso game).
- They introduced the building of grass-thatched houses.
- They introduced sandal wearing.

c) Economic contributions.

- **They started salt mining at Lake Katwe.**
- **They introduced the knowledge of iron smelting.**
- **They introduced long-horned cattle.**
- **The introduced coffee growing.**
- **They introduced bark cloth making.**

Ways iron smelting strengthened the Chwezi empire.

- **The Bachwezi started making strong tools for cultivation.**
- **The Bachwezi made strong weapons for defence and expansion.**

Reasons/ causes for the collapse of the Chwezi dynasty.

- **The empire was too large to be controlled by one ruler.**
- **Death of their beloved/ royal cow (Bihogo).**
- **Outbreak of drought and famine.**
- **Disunity among the people.**
- **Outbreak of epidemic diseases in the empire.**
- **Rebellions by distant princes.**
- **The Luo invasion. This led to the final collapse of the Chwezi dynasty.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Luo-Babiito dynasty*** *replaced the Chwezi dynasty. This was founded by Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga.*
- ✓ ***Bunyoro kingdom*** *replaced Bunyoro-Kitara empire and* ***Isingoma Mpuga Rukidi*** *was the first omukama of Bunyoro.*

Examples of kingdoms that were formed after the collapse of Bunyoro kitara empire.

- **Buganda kingdom**
- **Bunyoro kingdom**
- **Ankole kingdom**
- **Wanga kingdom**
- **Karagwe kingdom**
- **Tooro kingdom**
- **Ruanda-urundi kingdom**

KINGDOMS IN EAST AFRICA.

- **A kingdom is an area ruled by a kind/queen.**
- **Kingdoms in East Africa were formed in the interlacustrine region.**

Tribes that formed the ancient kingdoms in East Africa,

Country	*Tribe*	*Kingdom*	*Title of the leader*
Uganda	Banyankole	Ankole	Omugabe
	Baganda	Buganda	Kabaka
	Batooro	Tooro	Omukama
	Banyoro	Bunyoro	Omukama
	Bakonzo	Rwenzururu	Omusinga
Kenya	Abaluhya	Wanga	Nabongo
Tanzania	Nyambo	Karagwe	Omuggabe
Rwanda and Burundi	Tutsi	Ruanda-urundi	Umwami

Characteristics of kingdoms.

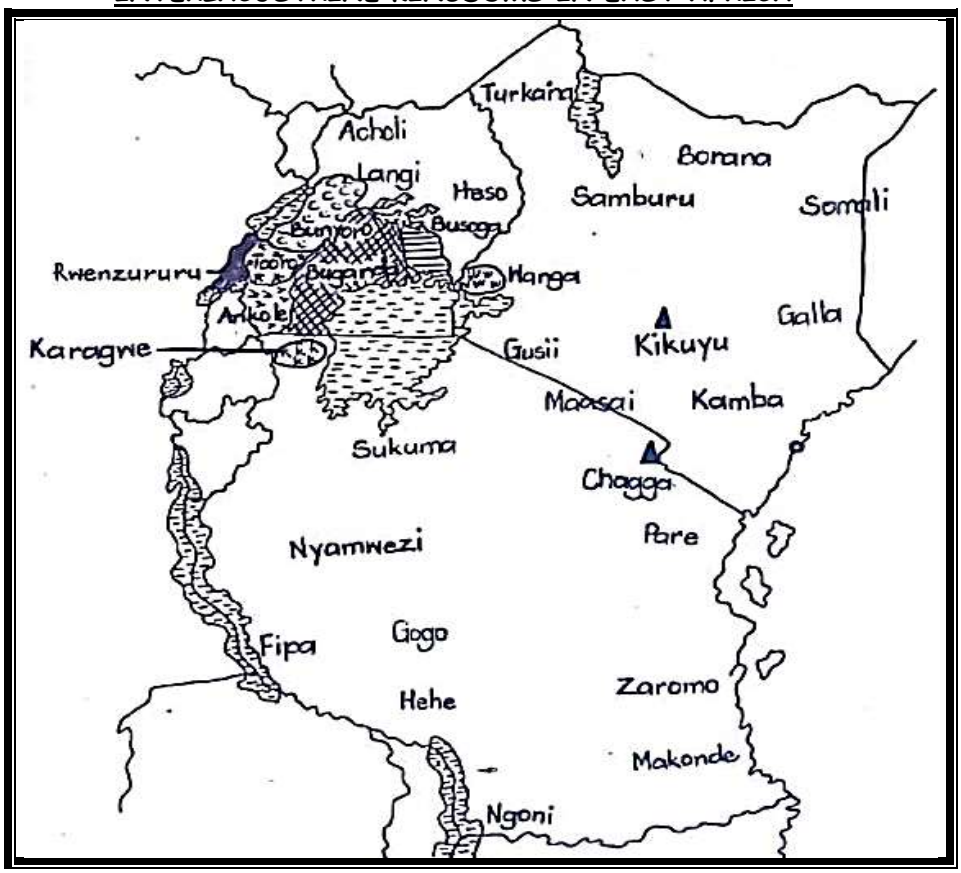
- **They have hereditary rulers.**
- **They have social and cultural institutions.**
- **They have a single supreme king at a time.**
- **The kings have absolute powers over their subjects.**
- **They have royal regalia as instruments of authority.**

Examples of Royal regalia.

- **The royal crown.**
- **The royal stool.**
- **The royal spear.**
- **The royal drum.**

N.B;-Royal regalia *are symbols by which a kingdom is identified.*

INTERLACUSTRINE KINGDOMS IN EAST AFRICA



Advantages/importance of kingdoms.

- **They promote unity among people.**
- **They promote culture in the society.**
- **They promote morals among the people.**
- **They offer scholarships to students.**
- **They help to mobilise people for national duties e.g. elections, immunisation.**

Disadvantanges of kingdoms.

- **They promote dictatorship.**
- **There is unequal distribution of wealth among the people.**
- **They promote tribalism.**
- **They promote the interests of the minority over the majority.**
- **They promote regional rather than national development.**

INTERLACUSTRINE KINGDOMS IN EAST AFRICA.

BUNYORO KINGDOM.

- **Bunyoro kingdom started after the fall of the Chwezi empire.**
- **The kingdom was founded by the Luo migrants from Northern Uganda.**
- **Bunyoro kingdom was founded by Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga under the Luo-Babiito dynasty.**

- **The title given to the king of Bunyoro is <u>omukama.</u>**
- **Bunyoro grew and expanded during the reign of omukama Kamurasi. After his death, his son called Kabalega succeeded him as a new king.**
- **Currently Bunyoro kingdom covers districts like Kibale, Masindi, Buliisa, Kiryandongo, Hoima etc.**
- **The current king of Bunyoro kingdom is <u>Solomon Gafabusa Iguru</u>**
- **Kabalega organized Bunyoro kingdom by building a strong army called <u>Abarusura</u>.**

<u>Duties of the Abarusura</u>.

- **To promote peace and security in Bunyoro kingdom.**
- **To raid the neighbouring community for expansion.**
- **To enforce law and order.**

<u>Factors that led to the expansion/ growth of Bunyoro kingdom</u>.

- **Bunyoro had able and strong leaders.**
- **Bunyoro had a strong standing army.**
- **Bunyoro was strategically located around Lake Albert.**
- **Bunyoro had plenty of food for the growing population.**

Note:

-Bunyoro kingdom faced many challenges when their king Kabalega was invaded and exiled by the British to ***Seychelles islands*** *in the Indian ocean by the help of* ***Semei Kakungulu*** *for his resistance to colonial rule. After the death of Kabalega at Jinja, his son Yosia Kitahimbwa succeeded him*

-During the reign of omukama Kyebambe Nyamutukura, his son called ***Prince Kaboyo Omuhanwa*** *left the palace and started Tooro kingdom.*

<u>TOORO KINGDOM</u>

- **The title given to the king of Tooro is <u>omukama</u>.**
- **The current king of Tooro is Oyo Nyimba Kabamba Iguru IV.**
- **Currently,Tooro covers districts like Kabarole,Kyenjojo,Kyegegwa,Kamwenge.etc.**

Note:- *When omukama Kabalega overthrew and exiled omukama Kasagama, Capt. Frederick Lugard restored omukama Kasagama of Tooro back to his throne.*

<u>Reasons why Tooro broke away from Bunyoro kingdom</u>.

- **The Batooro felt that they were not adequately protected by the king of Bunyoro from their enemies.**
- **The Batooro felt that they were very far from the capital of Bunyoro since they would take long to see the king.**
- **Prince Kaboyo was very greedy and impatient for power since he had been appointed as a clan leader which had reduced his chances of becoming a king.**

<u>BUGANDA KINGDOM</u>.

- **There are two traditions that explain the founder of Buganda kingdom.**
- **According to the Banyoro (Nyoro tradition), Kato Kimera is believed to be the founder of Buganda kingdom. <u>Kato Kimera</u> was the twin brother to Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga the founder of Bunyoro kingdom.**
- **According to the Baganda (Ganda tradition), <u>Kintu</u> is believed to be the founder of Buganda kingdom and this is explained by the Legend of the first Muganda.**
- **Buganda kingdom is located in the North West of lake Victoria and currently occupies districts like Kampala, Mukono,Mpigi,Luwero, Mityana, Masaka, Bukomansimbi, Kalungu, Mubende, Nakaseke Wakiso,etc.**
- **The title given to the king of Buganda is <u>kabaka</u>. The king in Buganda had obsolute powers over his subjects.**

- Buganda kingdom grew stronger and expanded in the 18th century.

Factors for the expansion and growth of Buganda kingdom.

- Buganda had strong and able leaders.
- Unity among the people of Buganda.
- Buganda had a strong standing army.
- Buganda was strategically located near Lake Victoria. This helped to safeguard Buganda against her enemies.
- Buganda had plenty of food for the growing population.
- Buganda acquired guns from the Arabs which were used in the expansion.
- Buganda kingdom had fertile soils which increased food production.

Famous kings of Buganda and what they are remembered for.

King (kabaka)	*What he is known for.*
Kabaka Ssuuna II	❖ He welcomed the first Arab traders to Buganda kingdom.
Kabaka Muteesa I	❖ He invited Christian missionaries to Uganda through Henry Morton Stanley.
Kabaka Mwanga	❖ He ordered for the killing of the Christian converts in Buganda. ❖ He was exiled to Seychelles islands where he died.
Kabaka Daudi Chwa	❖ He was an infant king of Buganda during the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement. ❖ He ruled Buganda kingdom with the help of the regents.
Kabaka Edward Muteesa II	❖ He rejected the proposed idea of forming the East African federation. ❖ He was exiled to Britain by sir Andrew Cohen in 1953.
Kabaka Ronald Muwenda Mutebi	❖ He is the current king of Buganda.

How the kabaka was important to Buganda kingdom.

- ❖ He was the commander in chief of the army.
- ❖ He was the chief decision maker.
- ❖ He was the chief judge
- ❖ He distributed land to clans and his loyal subjects.

WANGA KINGDOM.

- The Wanga kingdom was the only kingdom formed in Kenya.
- It is found on the shores of Lake Victoria in Kenya.
- Nabongo is the title given to the king of Wanga kingdom.
- Wanga kingdom was formed by the Abaluhya tribe in Kenya.
- Wanga kingdom acquired its name from one of its leaders known as king Wanga.
- During colonial rule, Nabongo Mumia collaborated with the British and extended their rule to Wanga kingdom.

KARAGWE KINGDOM.

- It was the only kingdom formed in Tanzania.
- Karagwe kingdom is located on the shores of Lake Victoria in Tanzania.
- It was formed by the Abanyambo tribe in Tanzania.
- King Rumanika of Karagwe kingdom welcomed John Speke and James Grant on their journey to East Africa.

CHIEFDOMS IN EAST AFRICA.

- A chiefdom is an area ruled by a chief.

Examples of tribes that formed chiefdoms in east Africa.

- Iteso
- Acholi
- Masai
- Kikuyu
- Kamba
- Chagga
- Basoga

Ancient chiefdoms in East Africa.

- Chagga chiefdom
- Yao chiefdom
- Nyamwezi chiefdom
- Busoga chiefdom

Duties of the chiefs.

- They settled disputes in the chiefdom.
- They collected taxes.
- They conducted cultural rituals.

NYAMWEZI CHIEFDOM.

- The word Nyamwezi means "people of the moon"
- The Nyamwezi were called so because they came from the western direction where the moon is first seen.
- They were named the Nyamwezi by the coastal dwellers.
- The Nyamwezi rulers became more powerful and joined more chiefdoms together into one empire called the Nyamwezi empire.
- The Nyamwezi lived in small communities headed by the chiefs called the ntemi/mutemi (in singular).

Duties of the Mtemi.

- He prayed for the people.
- He settled conflicts among people.
- He made sacrifices to the gods on behalf of his people.
- He collected taxes.

Famous rulers of the Nyamwezi.

- Chief Mirambo
- Nyungu ya Mawe

The rule of mirambo.

- Mirambo started his territory as a small chiefdom called Ugowe.
- He expanded his territory by attacking the neighbouring communities.
- Urambo became the headquarters of Mirambo.
- Mirambo's ambitions were to create a large empire with wealth and military power.
- Urambo which was the capital of Mirambo became a major trading centre.

Reasons fo the success of Mirambo.

- He had a well trained army called the Ruga Ruga.
- He was very hard working.
- He acquired guns from the Arabs.
- His ability to fight, defeat and absorb other communities.

Importance of the Ruga Ruga.

- It protected the chiefdom from external attacks.
- It invaded trade caravans for goods.
- It raided communities for expansion.

Causes of the downfall of Mirambo's empire.

- The death of Mirambo.
- The indiscipline of the Ruga Ruga.
- There was no unifying force.

❖ Weak leaders like Mirambo's brother Mpandashalo.
❖ The retention of much power by local chiefs.

The rise of Nyungu ya Mawe.

- Nyungu ya mawe means "pot of stones". It was a praise name.
- The headquarters of Nyungu ya Mawe were at Kiwele.

The Administrative system of Nyungu ya Mawe.

❖ He had centralized admistrative units governed by chiefs (Vatwale).
❖ All trade routes were directly under him.

Reasons why Nyungu ya Mawe was economically successful.

❖ He raided caravans of their items.
❖ He sold ivory and slaves.
❖ He had control over the main trade routes.

Note:

-Nyungu ya Mawe died in 1894 and was succeeded by his daughter Mgalula.
-Nyungu Ya Mawe's empire collapsed when the Germans occupied his capital at Kiwele in 1895.

Reasons why some tribes didn't form kingdoms.

- They lived unsettled life.
- They were not united.
- They were not organised.

THE MASAI

- They belong to the Plain Nilotes.
- They settled in southern Kenya and northern Tanzania mainly in the rift valley areas.
- They are mainly cattle keepers.
- The Masai had no single ruler.
- They were divided into many groups. i.e age, sex, elders.
- Each group was led by a religious leader called Laibon (chief) e.g. Laibon Lenana.
- The Masai society had several ceremonies e.g. ear cutting, milk drinking, circumcision, meat ceremony etc.

THE KIKUYU

- They belong to the Bantu and settled on slopes of mountain Kenya.
- The ancestors of the Kikuyu are believed to be Kikuyu and his wife Mumbi who were created by Ngai (god).
- Each family had a homestead, several families formed a ridge (mbari).
- The Kikuyu were ruled in a clan system.
- The political power was exercised by the council of elders led by a headman (muramati).

Duties of the headman (muramati).

- Conducting initiation ceremonies.
- Presiding over religious ceremonies.
- Settling disputes.
- To make laws.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION OF THE PEOPLE OF EAST AFRICA.

- This refers to how people of pre-colonial East Africa used to relate with each other.

Ways how different societies were socially organised.

- They formed clan units
- They had families
- They had age groups
- They had rules and regulations.
- They offered traditional education.
- They carried out social activities.
- They had traditional ways of worship.
- They performed traditional practices.
- They had taboos. (beliefs that forbade people from certain acts)
- Culture was highly respected by all people in the society.

- **A clan is an organised group of people under one ancestor / fore father.**
- **Clans are formed by families that are related to each other.**
- **A Lineage is a small group of people in a clan under one ancestor.**
- **Each clan is headed by a clan leader.**

Duties of a clan leader.

- **To keep clan records.**
- **To settle disputes among clan members.**
- **To preside over clan meetings.**
- **They distribute land among clan members.**
- **To chair clan meetings.**

Examples of clans in our community

- **Lion clan**
- **Elephant clan**
- **Sheep clan**
- **Leopard clan**
- **Dog clan**
- **Goat clan**

Symbols of a clan for identification.

- **Clan name**
- **Drumming**
- **A totem**

Note:

- ✓ ***A totem*** *is a special animal, object or plant that is highly respected in a particular clan.*
- ✓ *Clan leaders organise meetings that bring different people together.*

Duties of clan heads.

- **They settle disputes among clan members.**
- **The register clan members.**
- **They conduct clan meetings.**
- **They conduct religious ceremonies.**
- **They unite clan members.**
- **They distribute land among clan members.**

TABOOS.

- **A taboo is a belief that forbids people from certain acts.**

Examples of taboos.

- **No sitting on fire stones.**
- **No eating your totem.**
- **No whistling at night.**
- **No sweeping at night.**
- **No sitting on the grinding stone.**

Importance of taboos.

- **They promote unity.**
- **They promote morals among children.**
- **They promote safety.**
- **They promote respect for elders.**

Note:-*A totem* *is an animal, bird, insect or plant that is most respected by people in a particular clan.*

Examples of clans and their totems.

Tribe	*clan*	*Totem*
Bakonzo	Abakyira	grasshopper
	Abahira	Guinea fowl
Iteso	Ikomolo	Ikwenyi
Baganda	Nte	Cow
	Mamba	Lung fish
	Mbogo	Buffalo
	Enkima	Monkey
	Mpologoma	Lion

CULTURE.

- Culture is the way people live and behave in a given society.

Types of culture.

- Material culture.
- Non-material culture

Material culture.

- These are tangible things (items) used by people in their daily life.

Examples of material culture.

- Royal regalia.
- Crafts
- Weapons.
- Food
- Clothes .

Non-material culture.

- These are beliefs and practices of people in their societies.

Examples of non-material culture.

- Religious practices.
- Language.
- Naming.
- Taboos.
- Circumcision.
- Customs.
- Greeting.

Elements of culture.

- Marriage ceremony.
- Music.
- Feeding.
- Dressing.
- Worship.
- Burial ceremony.
- Land demarcation.

Challenges facing African culture.

- Rural-urban migration.
- High mortality rate.
- Separation of children from parents.
- Environmental degradation.
- Media influence e.g. use of internet.
- Parents take long hours at work.

Ways of preserving/ promoting culture.

- By protecting historical sites.
- By organising music festivals.
- By organising traditional games.
- By telling stories and legends.
- By wearing cultural clothes.
- By teaching culture in schools
- By organising cultural games.

Importance of culture.

- It promotes morals among people.
- Cultural institutions promote development of places.
- It promotes unity and cooperation among children.
- It promotes hard work.
- It promotes identity.

Cultural practices carried out by people in different communities.

-Circumcision -ear notching - tattooing - Female Genital Mutilation -detoothing -child naming

Dangers of some cultural practices.

- Some cultural practices lead to the spread of diseases.
- They lead to body deformities.
- They lead to violation of human rights.
- They cause psychological torture to children.
- They are painful e.g. Female Genital Mutilation.

N.B:-***Female Genital Mutilation*** *was commonly practised by the* ***Sabiny*** *in Eastern Uganda.*

*- **Circumcision** is commonly practised by the **Bakonzo** and the **Bagishu** in Uganda.*

SOCIAL ACTIVITIES.

- These are activities that bring people together in the commmunity.

Examples of social activities.

- Child naming ceremonies.
- Burial ceremonies
- Wedding ceremonies.
- Birthday parties.
- Last funeral rites.
- Circumcision ceremonies.
- Graduation parties.
- Initiation of heirs.

Importance of social activities.

- They promote unity among people.
- They promote culture in the community.
- They strengthen clan norms.
- They promote morals among people.
- They promote identity.
- They promote love among people.

Informal education (traditional education).

- This is the type of education given to the young ones from their homes.
- Children are trained various skills on how they can live successfully in their local environment. This was the main type of education in the past.
- It was mainly provided by the parents, elders and leaders in the society.
- It was provided at fire places, in the bush etc.
- Ways traditional education was conducted.

- Through songs.
- Through stories.
- Through folk tales.
- Through proverbs.

Lessons/ skills that were taught to young ones during informal education.

-Hunting -Wrestling -Raiding (fighting) -Digging - Iron smelting - Building houses.

Importance of informal/ traditional education.

- It promotes and preserves culture.
- It teaches young ones vocational skills.
- It trains children proper behaviour and manners.
- It trains young ones to be self reliant and responsible citizens.

WORSHIP.

- Worship is the way people express honour for the deity or any sacred object.
- The people of East Africa largely worshipped their local gods. This kind of worship/ religion was known as African Traditional Religion (ATR).

Places where people worshipped from in ATR.

-Shrines/ temples - under big trees - on hills and mountains - in the forest.

Ways in which people worshipped in ATR.

- By lighting fire places.
- By singing and drumming.
- By pouring a little drinks before taking them.
- By giving food and drinks to their gods.
- Through offertories
- Through sacrifices.
- By roasting meat at fire places as offering.
- By praying.

Ways people worship God today.

- By reading the Bible.
- By paying alms/ tithe/ offertory.
- By singing hymns.
- By clapping hands for God.
- By dancing for God.

Names of God in some societies.

Society/ tribe	*Name of God*
Buganda	Katonda
Ankole	Ruhanga
Bugishu	Were
Kikuyu	Ngai
Acholi	Lubanga
Basoga	Kibumba
Iteso	Lokusuban
Kakwa	Nyulese
Bunyoro	Rugaba

Reasons why people worship today.

- To get blessings.
- To have children.
- To get good harvests.
- To get rain.

Examples of religions in East Africa.

- African Traditional Religion (ATR).
- Islam
- Christianity
- Buddhism.
- Hinduism.

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION OF PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL EAST AFRICA.

- East African socities organised themselves in trade communities.

Ways the people of pre-colonial East Africa were economically organized.

- Through practising their traditional occupation.e.g. cultivation, pastoralism, fishing etc.
- Through iron smelting.
- Through carrying out trade. The main system of trade was barter trade because there was no medium of exchange during that time.

Economic activities that were carried out by people in different societies.

- Crop growing
- Fishing
- Trade
- iron smelting
- pottery
- salt mining
- pastoralism
- hunting

TRADE.

- Trade is the buying and selling of goods and services.

Systems of trade.

- Barter trade.
- Monetary trade.

BARTER TRADE.

- Barter trade is the exchange of goods for goods and services.
- It was the commonest system of trade amongst the people of pre-colonial East Africa because there was no money by then.

Items of trade that were exchanged during Barter trade.

-Salt, -matooke, -slaves, -bark cloth, -ivory, -hides and skin, -animals, -iron tools, -herbal medicine.

Factors that enabled Barter trade to be carried out.

- Absence of currency.
- Production of different goods by communities.
- Unity and friendship among people.

Advantages of Barter trade.

- It cheap since it doesn't involve the use of money.

- It creates friendship and unity among traders.
- It creates chances of employment to people.
- It easy for the illiterates.
- You use what you have to get what you don't have.

Disadvantages of barter trade.

- There was double coincidence of wants.
- It was hard to store wealth.
- It did not favour people without physical goods to exchange.
- There was no standard measure of value for goods.
- It was difficult to move with bulky goods over long distances.
- There is wastage of time to look for a person with what you want.

Effects of barter trade on the people of pre-colonial East Africa.

- It promoted peace and unity.
- It enabled people get new items of trade.
- It promoted friendship among people.
- It led to development of trade routes.

MONETARY TRADE.

- This is the system of trade that involves the use of money as a medium of exchange.
- When the Arabs came to East Africa, they changed the medium of exchange when they brought cowrie shells from Maldive islands.
- Cowrie shells was the first medium of exchange(form of currency) to be introduced by the Arabs in East Africa.
- Rupees/Indian rupees was the second form of currency to be introduced in East Africa by the Indians.

Qualities of money.

- It should be portable.
- It should be divisible.
- It should be durable.
- It should be acceptable.

Uses of money.

- It is used as medium of exchange.
- It helps consumers to buy goods and services.
- It helps in payment of debts.
- It is a common measure of value.
- It promotes local and international trade.
- It helps in buying assets e.g. land house etc.

Ways in which people misuse money.

- Through drinking alcohol excessively.
- Through murdering people.
- Through bribing people.
- Through prostitution.

Advantages of monetary trade.

- There is a standard measure of value.
- It discourages cheating.
- It is easy to carry money than physical goods.

Disadvantages of monetary trade.

- Money can easily be lost.
- It doesn't not promote friendship among people.
- It encourages stealing.



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of the term History.
2. Mention any four sources of history.
3. State any one advantage oral tradition has over written history as a source of history.
4. Why is Dr. Louis Leakey remembered in the history of East Africa?
5. Name the place in East Africa where the oldest skull of man was discovered.
6. Why is East Africa referred to as the cradle of mankind?
7. Give any two ways a museum is economically important to a country.
8. Name the stone age site in Uganda which is famous for rock paintings.
9. How is Bigobyamugenyi related to the Bachwezi?
10. State any two characteristics of the old stone age man.
11. Which important discoveries marked the end of each of the following stone ages;
    (i) Old stone age.
    (ii) Middle stone age.
    (iii) New stone age.
12. Give any two ways the discovery of fire helped early man to live in caves.
13. How was a dog useful to early man.
14. In which way did the discovery of farming help man to live a settled life?
15. Give any three ways early man obtained his food.
16. How was a bolas useful to early man?
17. Give one way the discovery of iron smelting improved early man's life.
18. Complete the table below correctly.

Ethnic group	*Origin*	*One tribe in each country*		
		Uganda	*Kenya*	*Tanzania*
(i) Bantu	----------	----------	--------	---------
(ii) ----------	----------	Sabiny	--------	---------
(iii) ----------	----------	----------	Masai	---------
(iv) Cushites	Ethiopia	----------	--------	---------

19. What is an Ethnic group?
20. Give any two reasons why the Bantu settled in the interlacustrine region.
21. Mention one Bantu tribe that lives on the slopes of the following mountains.
    (i) Mountain Rwenzori
    (ii) Mountain Kilimanjaro
    (iii) Mountain Elgon
22. State any four causes for the migration and settlement of the ethnic groups into Uganda.
23. How did the migration of the Bantu into East Africa affect the Bushmen?
24. Mention the three sub-groups of the Nilotes.
25. How did the Alur tribe come into existence in East Africa?
26. Name the place where the River-Lake Nilotes first settled in East Africa.
27. State any three ways the migration of the Nilotes affected the people of East Africa.
28. How is Emigration different from Immigration?
29. Give any two reasons why many people migrate from villages to towns today.
30. State any two ways the government can encourage the migration and settlement of people from towns to villages.
31. Give one way the people living in towns depend on those living in villages.
32. Name the earliest empire to be formed in East Africa.

33. Give any three ways the Bachwezi contributed to the economic development in East Africa.
34. Why did the Bachwezi dig ditches around their kingdom?
35. State any three factors for the collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
36. Give any two ways kingdoms are important to a country.
37. Name the interlacustrine kingdom which replaced Bunyoro-Kitara.
38. What name was given to the strong army of;
    (i) Omukama Kabalega?
    (ii) Chief Mirambo?
39. Why is Seychelles islands historically remembered in Buganda and Bunyoro?
40. Name the only Bantu tribe which formed a kingdom in Kenya.
41. State any three factors that led to the growth and expansion of Buganda kingdom.
42. Name the famous king of Wanga kingdom who collaborated with the British.
43. Name the famous king of Buganda who ruled with the help of the regents.
44. Give any three ways the people of pre-colonial East Africa socially organised themselves.
45. Mention any two duties performed by clan leaders in most pre-colonial societies in East Africa.
46. Give the meaning of the term Culture.
47. State one way culture can be preserved in our society today.
48. Give any three ways culture is important in the society.
49. Mention any three social activities that are commonly practised among the people of East Africa.
50. Why was Barter trade the commonest trade system among pre-colonial societies in East Africa?

EARLY VISITORS/ FOREIGNERS TO EAST AFRICA.

- A foreigner is a person from a different country to another that is not his/ her own.

Groups of foreigners that came to East Africa.

- Traders
- Explorers
- Christian missionaries
- Colonialists
- Settlers

The traders.

These are group of foreigners who came to East Africa to carryout trade.

Groups of traders who came to East Africa.

- Arab traders from Arabia.
- Indian traders from India.
- European traders from Europe.
- Persian traders from Persia.

THE ARAB TRADERS.

- These were the first group of foreigners to come to East Africa.
- The Arab traders came from Arabia.
- The Arabs used special boats called dhows to come to East Africa.
- The dhows were driven to and from the coast of East Africa by monsoon winds.
- The settled along the coast of East Africa and formed the Zenj empire.
- The coast of East Africa was called "Land of zenj" meaning "the land of black people".
- Ahmed Bin Ibrahim was the first Arab trader to come to Uganda.

Reasons for the coming of the Arab traders to East Africa.

- To carryout trade.
- To spread the Islamic faith.
- Some were running away from religious wars and persecution in their home country.

The Zenj empire.

- The word Zenj means "black".
- The Zenj empire was the land of the black people.
- This empire was founded by an Arab called Hassan Bin Ali along the coast of East Africa.
- Zenj empire was mainly a trade empire between the local people and the Arabs. It had less political leadership.
- The most important trading city was Kilwa. Other trading centres were; Mogadishu, Malindi,sofala, Mombasa, and Zanzibar.
- In 1840, Seyyid Said became the ruler of the Zenj empire.
- He made Zanzibar the capital of the empire.
- He transferred his capital from Muscat (Oman) to Zanzibar.
- Seyyid Said introduced the growing of cloves at Zanzibar.

Examples of trade items the Arabs brought to East Africa.

-Guns - mirrors - gun powder -ornaments - beads -glasses - jewellery - carpets.

Examples of trade items the Arabs got from East Africa.

-Ostrich feathers - ivory - gold - local salt - slaves - hides -wax -iron ore -copper. etc.

Effects for the coming of Arab traders into East Africa.

a) **Positive effects/contributions.**

- They promoted trade by introducing new trade items.
- They introduced Islam.
- They introduced Kiswahili culture through the intermarriages of the coastal Bantu and the Arabs.
- They introduced new crops like rice, cloves etc.
- They introduced zebu cattle.
- They introduced cowrie shells. (the first form of money to used in East Africa.)
- They introduced the Arab styles of dressing and building houses.
- They led to development of coastal towns eg.Kilwa, Mombasa etc

Negative effects for the coming of the Arabs into East Africa.

- The exploited East Africa's resources.
- They introduced slave trade.
- They increased poaching of elephants for ivory.
- They undermined African culture.
- They led to wars and conflicts in East Africa.

Reasons why the Arabs took long to enter the interior of East Africa.

- They feared hostile tribes like Masai.
- There were no proper routes to the interior of East Africa.
- They feared attacks from dangerous wild animals.

Reasons why the Arabs took long to spread Islam in East Africa.

- The Arabs were more interested in trade than spreading Islam.
- There were very few muslim preachers in East Africa.
- The Africans hated the Arabs for being slave traders.
- Arabic language was too difficult to be understood by the people of East Africa.
- The Africans feared some Islamic practices such as circumcision, fasting etc.

LONG DISTANCE TRADE.

- This was a trade that was carried out between the coastal people and those in the interior of East Africa.
- The Long distance trade was called so because traders moved long distances on foot carrying their goods.

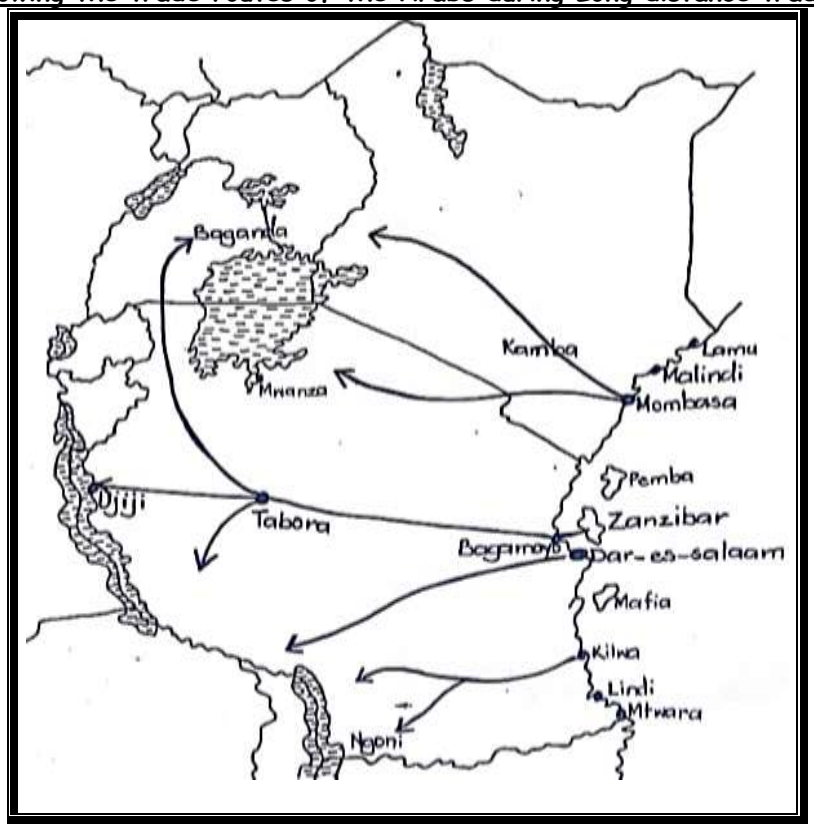
- During Long distance trade, traders moved in caravans for protection against wild animals and hostile people.
- They also moved in caravans to protect themselves against bandits.
- Barter trade was the system of trade used during long distance trade until the introduction of cowrie shells.
- The Long distance trade was organized along three trade routes.
- The Northern route ran up to Chagga land and Kilimanjaro area. It also moved through the Masai land to Wanga kingdom.

On this route, the Akamba provided iron, cattle and salt.

- The Central route ran via Central Tanzania to Tabora. The Tabora market was built on his route.

  It continued to Ujiji and Karagwe. It also branched to Uganda. The main trade items were ivory, salt and cattle.
- The Southern route started from Kilwa to Malawi through Yao, Makua and Makonde. The main trade items along this route were the slaves.
- **Note:**-*A caravan is a group of traders with their goods moving together on foot.*

A map showing the trade routes of the Arabs during Long distance trade in East Africa.



Tribes in East Africa who took part in the Long distance trade.

- Baganda.
- Nyamwezi.
- Banyoro.
- Yao.
- Akamba.
- Kikuyu

Foreigners who took part in the Long distance trade.

- Arabs.
- Indians.
- Persians.

Trading centres/towns during Long distance trade.

- Zanzibar.
- Sofala
- Tabora.
- Kilwa.

Ivory was an important trade item during



- **Bagamoyo.**

Trade items from different tribes.

Baganda	*Nyamwezi*	*Kamba*	*Yao*
ivory,slaves,hides, skins ,cattle	hoes, ivory, salt, iron ore, grains, wax	ivory, hides and skin, honey and wax.	ivory, slaves.

Effects of Long distance trade.

a) Positive effects.

- ❖ **Kings and chiefs became richer.**
- ❖ **It led to introduction of new items in East Africa.**
- ❖ **It led to introduction of Arabic language.**
- ❖ **It led to development of coastal towns.**
- ❖ **It led to expansion of kingdoms.**
- ❖ **It led to development of Swahili culture in East Africa.**
- ❖ **It led to introduction of new dressing styles.**
- ❖ **It led to the spread of Islam in East Africa.**

b) Negative effects.

- ❖ **It led to introduction of slave trade.**
- ❖ **It led to over exploitation of East Africa's resources.**
- ❖ **It led to loss of African culture.**
- ❖ **It lead to death of people as a result of slave trade.**
- ❖ **It led to wars and conflicts among societies.**

SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Slave trade is the buying and selling of human beings.**
- **A slave is a person who is owned and controlled by another person.**
- **Slavery is the state of being owned by another person.**
- **Slave trade was introduced in East Africa by the Arab traders.**

Reasons why slave trade was introduced in East Africa.

- **Slaves were needed to carry goods from the interior to the coast of East Africa.**
- **There was need for labour on plantations and in mines.**
- **Traders needed slaves to do domestic work.**
- **African kings and chiefs wanted foreign goods in exchange for slaves.**

Ways slaves were got/ obtained.

- **Through raiding villages.**
- **Through buying war captives from African chiefs and kings.**
- **Through capturing lonely people.**
- **Through abduction.**

Most famous slave traders in East Africa.

- **Hamed Bin Muhammed (Tippu Tip)-He was the most powerful slave trader in East Africa.**
- **Abu Said**
- **Fundikiri**
- **Msri**

Note:

- ✓ ***Khartoumers*** *were the worst slave traders from Egypt and Sudan. They raided people of Northern Uganda i.e. Acholi, Alur and Lugbara for slaves.*

✓ ***Sir Samuel Baker*** *built* ***Fort Patiko*** *which protected the people of Northern Uganda from the Khartoumers who were slave traders.*

Qn. *Why was Sir Samuel Baker liked by most people in Acholi land?*

Qn. *How did Sir Samuel Baker help to end slave trade in Northern Uganda?*

African tribes who mostly took part in slave trade.

- **Yao**
- **Hehe**
- **Kamba**
- **Nyamwezi**
- **Baganda**
- **Banyoro**

Slave markets in East Africa.

- **Zanzibar -largest slave market located at the East African coast.**
- **Tabora (Kazeh)- largest slave market in the interior of East Africa.**
- **Kilwa**
- **Mombasa**
- **Malindi**

Places where slaves from East Africa were taken.

- **Mauritus**
- **America**
- **West indies**
- **Re-union islands**
- **Saudi Arabia**
- **Europe**
- **Pemba and Zanzibar – They were sold there to work on the plantations of the French.**

Methods used to stop slave trade.

- **Through publishing books about the evils of slave trade.**
- **Through use of military force.**
- **By signing treaties.**
- **Through decampaigning by the missionaries.**
- **By constructing the Kenya–Uganda railway. This enabled traders to use trains in transporting goods instead of using human beings.**
- **Britain made slave trade illegal.**
- **Slave markets were closed.**

Treaties that were signed to abolish/ stop slave trade in East Africa.

- **Moresby treaty: It was signed between Fairfax Moresby and Sultan Seyyid Said in 1822.**
- **Hamerton treaty: It was signed between colonel Hamerton and Seyyid said in 1845.**
- **Frere treaty: It was signed by Bartle Frere and Sultan Barghash in 1873.**

People who participated in the abolition of slave trade in East Africa.

❖ **Dr. David Livingstone.**
He wrote negative reports about the evils of slave trade to his home country.

❖ **Sir Samuel Baker.**
He built fort Patiko to protect the people of Northern Uganda from slave traders.

❖ **Sir William Wilberforce**
He decampaigned the evils of slave trade through the British parliament.

❖ **Seyyid Said**
He helped the British army to fight slave traders in the Indian ocean.

❖ **Adam Smith**

❖ **Granville Sharp**

❖ **Thomas Clarkson**

Note: *After the abolition of slave trade in East Africa, Zanzibar and Bagamoyo were made a home of freed slaves.*

Reasons why it was difficult to stop slave trade.

- ❖ **Kings and chiefs were supporting it.**
- ❖ **This was because they were getting a lot of wealth from it because it was profitable.**
- ❖ **There was still need for labour on plantation farms and in mines.**
- ❖ **The Arabs opposed the abolition of slave trade.**
- ❖ **Britain thought stopping slave trade would weaken its naval power.**
- ❖ **There was no better means of transport.**

Reasons why slave trade was abolished.

- ❖ **The industrial revolution in Europe. Machines were used on farms and mines instead of human beings.**
- ❖ **Slave trade was against human rights.**
- ❖ **Slave trade was a violent and destructive trade.**

Effects of slave trade in East Africa.

a) Positive effects of slave trade.

- **It led to introduction of Islamic religion in East Africa.**
- **It led to development of Kiswahili language and culture.**
- **It led to expansion of kingdoms and chiefdoms.**
- **It led to development of coastal and inland towns.**
- **It to introduction of new trade items.**
- **East Africa was known to the rest of the world.**

b) Negative effects of slave trade.

- **It led to death of people.**
- **It led to destruction of property.**
- **Families broke up.**
- **It led to hatred between traditional rulers and natives.**
- **It led to exploitation of East Africa's resources.**
- **Many people were displaced from their homes.**
- **It led to inter-tribal wars.**
- **It led to decline of agriculture as people were always at run.**
- **It increased famine as energetic people who would carryout farming were taken as slaves.**

THE INDIAN TRADERS.

- **These came from India.**
- **They came into groups i.e.Banyans and Indian coolies.**
- **The Banyans was the major group of Indian traders.**
- **The Banyans used to lend money to the local traders.**
- **The Indian coolies were brought to build the Kenya-Uganda railway.**

Contributions of the Indians to the economic development of East Africa.

- **They opened up shops in East Africa e.g.Allidina Visram who started up the first shop in Kampala.**
- **The Indian coolies built the Kenya–Uganda railway.**
- **They introduced rupees as a new form of currency.**
- **The Banyans lent money to local traders.**
- **They introduced Rupees as a form of currency.**
- **They built industries in East Africa e.g. Kakira sugar factory by Madhivan and Lugazi sugar factory by Mehta.**

✓ *Note:-**The Rupees** was the second form of currency which replaced the Cowrie shells.*

EUROPEAN TRADERS.

- **The Portuguese were the first Europeans to come to East Africa.**
- **The Portuguese mainly came to look for the shortest sea route to India.**
- **Other European traders were; the British, French and Germans.**

The major European traders in East Africa.

- **William Mackinnon for IBEACO.**
- **Dr. Carl Peters for GEACO.**

Major European chattered/trading companies in East Africa.

- **Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO) led by Sir William Mackinnon.**
- **German East Africa Company (GEACO) led by Dr. Carl Peters.**

Note:

- ***Captain Frederick Lugard*** *was the representative of IBEACo in Uganda.*
- *Trading companies built transport and communication lines in East Africa.*

Reasons why trading companies were formed.

- **To carry out trade.**
- **To protect missionaries.**
- **To set up commercial empires in East Africa.**
- **To control East African territories on behalf of their home governments.**

CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Christianity is a religion based on the teachings of Jesus Christ.**
- **Christianity was introduced by the missionaries from Europe especially from the countries of England, Germany, France and Italy.**
- ***A missionary*** **is a person who spreads the word of God in a foreign country.**

Note:

- *The Christian missionaries who came to Uganda were invited by Kabaka Muteesa I of Buganda.*
- ***Henry Morton Stanley*** *wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting Christian missionaries to Uganda.*

Reasons why Kabaka Muteesa I invited Christian missionaries.

- **He wanted them to protect him against his enemies.**
- **He wanted them to bring him guns to fight against his enemies.**
- **He wanted them to promote literacy in Buganda.**
- **He wanted them to spread Christianity in Buganda.**

Groups of missionaries into East Africa.

- **Protestant missionaries.**
- **Roman catholic missionaries.**

Protestant missionaries.

- **They introduced the Anglican faith in East Africa.**
- **They came from Scotland, Germany and England.**
- **The Protestant missionaries to East Africa were mainly sponsored by the Church missionary Society (CMS).**

Note:-*The Church Missionary Society* *(CMS) sponsored the journeys of the protestant missionaries who came to East Africa.*

These first protestant missionaries to come to East Africa.

- **Johann Ludwig Krapf**
- **Johannes Rebman**
- **Jakob Erhardt**

Note:

- *The fisrt group of Protestant missionaries arrived in Uganda in 1877. This included; Reverend C.T Wilson, Shergold Smith and O'Neil.*
- *They set up their mission station at Mengo.*
- *This group was led to East Africa by Alexander Mackay who also arrived in Uganda in 1878.*

Notable Christian missionaries in Africa with their contributions.

Missionary	*Contribution(s)*
Alexander Mackay 	• He was the leader of the church missionary society in Uganda. • He was a carpenter, builder, and teacher. • He introduced the first printing press in Uganda. • The printing press was used to print reading materials and prayer books. • He taught practical and vocational skills like carpentry and joinery.
Dr. Albert Cook	• He built Mengo hospital.(the first hospital in Uganda) • He treated people suffering from sleeping sickness on the shores of Lake Victoria.
Kenneth Borup	• He introduced the fast growing cotton seeds in Uganda. This cotton was called the American upland cotton.
Robert Ashe	• He introduced the first bicycle in Uganda.
Bishop Alfred Tucker	• He mobilised funds from Europe to support the activities of IBEACo, when it had run bankrupt.
Johann Ludwig Krapf 	• He was the first missionary to come to East Africa in 1844. • He was later joined by Johannes Rebmann in 1846. • Krapf built the first mission station in East Africa at Rabai Mpya near Mombasa in Kenya. • Rabai Mpya acted as a base for missionary activities like;Bible reading, Bible translation, music rehearsals, training of catechists(clergymen) etc. • Krapf wrote the first Swahili dictionary. • Krapf translated the New testament Bible into Kiswahili language. He wanted to ease Bible reading, communication and hymn book reading. **Note:-** *Krapf became the first European to see mountain Kenya and river Tana.*
Johannes Rebmann	• He greatly influenced the lives of the Chagga. • He became the first European to see mountain Kilimanjaro.
Jakob Erhardt	• He attempted to draw the first map of East Africa.
Dr. David Livingstone. 	• He was sent by the Church Missionary Society. • He worked in East, Southern and Central Africa. • He formed the Universities Mission to Central Africa (UMCA). • He worked hard to stop slave trade in Africa. • He was a doctor, a missionary and an explorer. **Ways Dr.David Livingstone helped to end slave trade.** • He wrote reports about the evils of slave trade to his home government. • He mobilized funds from Europe to help in fighting against slave trade. **Note:** ✓ *He died of malaria in 1873 in Zambia. His body was carried by his faithful servants Chuma and Susi to the coast of East Africa.* ✓ *He was buried at Westminster Abbey, a burial place for prominent people in England.*
Dr Steer	• He built homes for the freed slaves in Zanzibar.

	• He built a cathedral in Zanzibar.

THE ROMAN CATHOLIC MISSIONARIES.

- This was the second group of Christian missionaries to come to East Africa.
- They introduced the Catholic faith in East Africa.

Examples of Roman catholic missionaries who came to East Africa.

- Fr. Simon Lourdel
- Bro. Amans Delmas
- Fr. Leon Barbot
- Fr. Girault Ludovic.

These came from Italy, France, and England.



Father Simon Lourdel

Groups of Roman catholic missionaries that came to East Africa.

- The White fathers from France.
- The Holy Ghost fathers from France.
- The Mill Hill fathers from England.
- The Verona fathers from Italy.
- The Comboni fathers from Italy.

The White fathers.

- They were the first Roman catholic missionaries to come to East Africa.
- They were sent by Cardinal lavengerie from Algeria.
- They were led by father Simon Lourdel (father Mapeera) and Brother Amans Delmas.
- They arrived in Uganda on 17th February, 1879.

The Mill hill fathers.

- They built Namilyango college school in 1902. It was the first boarding to be built by Christian missionaries in Uganda.

Reasons for the coming of Christian missionaries East Africa.

- To spread Christianity.
- To fight against slave trade.
- To civilize the people of East Africa.
- To teach people how to read and write.
- To suppress the spreading of Islam.
- To spread the European culture.

Problems faced by the Christian missionaries in East Africa.

- Difficulty in communication with the natives.
- Opposition from hostile people.
- Attacks from wild animals.
- They walked long and tiresome distances.
- Opposition from the Arabs.
- Attacks from tropical diseases.
- Shortage of supplies like medicine.

Effects for the coming of Christian missionaries in East Africa.

a) **Positive effects.**

- They spread Christianity in Uganda.
- They introduced modern farming methods.
- They stopped slave trade.
- They built churches eg. Lubaga, Namirembe etc
- They built schools eg. Namilyango College in 1902, Gayaza High school by the CMS in 1904, Mengo High School by the CMS in 1898, King's College Budo by the CMS in 1906, St.Mary's College Kisubi by the White fathers in 1906 etc.
- They built hospitals eg. Mengo hospital, Nsambya hospital, Rubaga hospital, Lacor hospital.
- They discouraged negative cultural practices.
- They introduced new crops eg.cotton by Kenneth Borup.

- **They taught Africans how to read and write/ introduced formal education.**
- **They taught people practical skills like carpentry, building and agriculture.**

Note:

- ***Formal education*** *is the type of education that replaced informal education.*
- *Formal education involved Reading, Writing and Arithmetic (3Rs).*

b) **Negative effects.**

- **Missionary work led to disunity among the people of East Africa.**
- **They led to the coming of colonialists in East Africa.**
- **They led to religious wars.**
- **They undermined African culture.**

How missionary work led to the colonisation of East Africa.

- **Missionary work caused divisions among people which weakened societies in East Africa.**
- **Missionary teachings softened the hearts of the people of East Africa which made them warmly welcome the colonialists.**
- **Missionaries called their home governments for protection in case of attacks.**
- **Missionaries acted as interpreters for colonialists and the people of East Africa.**
- **They signed treaties which were used by the colonialists to take over East African territories.**



Testing Exercise.

1. **Mention any four groups of foreigners who came to East Africa.**
2. **State any two reasons for the coming of the Arab traders to East Africa.**
3. **How were the monsoon winds helpful to the Arab traders who came to East Africa?**
4. **Name the first Arab trader to come to Uganda.**
5. **Name the ruling empire that was established by the Arabs along the East African coast.**
6. **Mention any three trade items that were introduced by the Arabs to East Africa.**
7. **State any three economic contributions of the Arabs in Uganda.**
8. **Give any two reasons why the Arabs took long to enter the interior of East Africa.**
9. **Mention any two reasons why Islam took long to be spread in East Africa.**
10. **Which type of cattle did the Arabs introduce in East Africa?**
11. **Give the meaning of Long distance trade.**
12. **Why did the Long distance traders in East Africa always move in caravans?**
13. **Mention any one tribe in each of these East African countries that took part in Long distance trade.**
    - **(i) Uganda**
    - **(ii) Kenya**
    - **(iii) Tanzania**
14. **How did long distance trade affect the population of elephants in East Africa?**
15. **State any two ways Long distance trade negatively affected the people of East Africa?**
16. **Give any one reason why slave trade was introduced in East Africa.**
17. **Give any two ways the slaves were obtained in East Africa.**
18. **Why was Sir Samuel Baker liked by the people of Acholi?**
19. **How did Sir Samuel Baker help to end slave trade in Northern Uganda?**
20. **Where was the largest slave market in East Africa?**
21. **Name the largest inland slave market in East Africa.**
22. **Write down any two treaties that were signed to end slave trade.**
23. **How did the construction of the Uganda railway help to end slave trade in East Africa?**

24. State any three ways slave trade affected the people of East Africa.
25. What role did Dr. David Livingston play towards the abolition of slave trade?
26. Why were the Indian coolies brought to Uganda?
27. Mention the group of Indians who were money lenders.
28. Give any two ways the Indians promoted economic development in Uganda.
29. Give any two reasons why the IBEACO was formed.
30. How was Sir William Mackinnon related to IBEACO?
31. What role did Henry Morton Stanley play toward the coming of the Christian missionaries to Uganda?
32. How did Dr. Albert Cook promote the health sector in Uganda?
33. Name the missionary who introduced the fast-growing cotton seeds in Uganda.
34. How did Bishop Alfred Tucker support the work of the IBEACO in East AFRICA?
35. Give any two contributions made by Johann Krapf towards the spreading of Christianity in East Africa.
36. State any three reasons for the coming of the Christian missionaries to Uganda.
37. Mention ant three problems that were faced by the Christian missionaries in Uganda.
38. Which type of education was introduced by the Christian missionaries in Uganda?
39. State any two negative effects of the coming of the Christian missionaries to East Africa.
40. Give one way missionary work paved way for colonisation of East Africa.

POPULATION IN EAST AFRICA.

- Population is the total number of people living in an area at a given time.
- In East Africa, Tanzania has the biggest population, followed by Kenya and Uganda.

The table below shows the population of East African Community member states as per 2020 National population statistics.

Country.	*Total population.*
❖ Tanzania	❖ Over 59 million people.
❖ Kenya	❖ Over 53 million people.
❖ Uganda	❖ Over 45 million people.
❖ Rwanda	❖ Over 12 million people.
❖ South Sudan	❖ Over 11.5 million people.
❖ Burundi	❖ Over 11 million people.

POPULATION GROWTH.

- Population growth is the increase in the number of people in an area.

Factors that encourage Population growth.

- High fertility rate in women.
- Improved medical services.
- Early marriages.
- Polygamous marriage.
- Availability of food.
- Ignorance about family planning methods.
- Improved security and peace.
- Immigration.
- Producing children for prestige.
- Refugee influx.

Advantages of population growth.

❖ It creates a large market for goods produced in an area.
❖ It provides cheap labour force in an area.
❖ The government collects more taxes from the people in areas with a large population.
❖ It leads to development of an area.

Disadvantages(dangers) of population growth.

- ❖ **It leads to shortage of land for settlement leading to land fragmentation.**
- ❖ **It leads to development of slums.**
- ❖ **It leads to easy spread of communicable diseases due to congestion.**
- ❖ **It leads to high crime rate especially in urban centres.**
- ❖ **It leads to inadequate social services in an area.**
- ❖ **It leads to over exploitation of natural resources leading to environmental degradation.**
- ❖ **It increases government expenditure and slows down other developments.**
- ❖ **It leads to unemployment.**

Ways of controlling population growth.

- ❖ **By encouraging people to use family planning methods.**
- ❖ **By promoting girl child education.**
- ❖ **By discouraging polygamy.**
- ❖ **By enforcing strict laws on immigration.**
- ❖ **By rewarding families with a small population.**
- ❖ **By discouraging early marriages.**

Natural disasters that may reduce the number of people in an area.

- **Famine due to drought.**
- **landslides/mudslides**
- **lightning**
- **storms**
- **volcanic eruption**
- **earthquakes**
- **epidemic diseases.**

Artificial hazards that may reduce the number of people in an area.

- **Road accidents**
- **water and food poisoning**
- **fire outbreaks**
- **plane crush.**
- **wars**

Note:

- ✓ ***Population explosion*** *is the sudden / rapid increase in the number of people in an area.*
- ✓ *Refugee influx can bring about a sudden increase in the number of people in an area.*

POPULATION CENSUS.

- **Population census is the official counting of people in a country.**
- **Population census is the process of collecting, analysing and using information about people in the country.**
- **Enumerators are trained people who collect information about people in the country during the census exercise.**
- **The census exercise is organized by the Ministry of Finance, Planning and Economic development.**
- **The body that has duty of conducting the census exercise is the Uganda Bureau of Statistics (UBOS).**
- **A census night is the night before the census exercise is carried out.**
- **Population census in Uganda is carried out after every ten years.**

Reasons why the population census in Uganda is carried out after every ten years.

- **It is very expensive to carry out.**
- **To allow population changes to take place.**

Importance of carrying out a population census in a country.

- To effectively plan for the people.
- To determine the birth and death rates.
- To determine the population structure (composition of the population in terms of age and sex).
- To know the level of people's living standards.
- To know the total number of people in a country.
- To know the level of literacy in a country.

Types of information collected during a population census.

- Age of the family members.
- Number of children produced by the couple.
- Type of housing in a home stead.
- Sex of the family members.
- Religious status of the family members.
- Occupation of the people in a family.
- Major source of energy used at home
- Level of education of the family members.

Problems faced by enumerators during a population census.

- Harsh weather conditions
- Ignorance amongst the people
- Moving long distances
- Poor transport network in some areas.
- Insecurity in some areas.

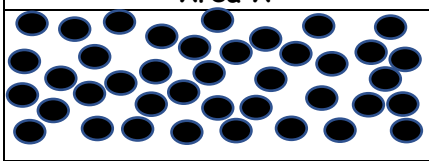
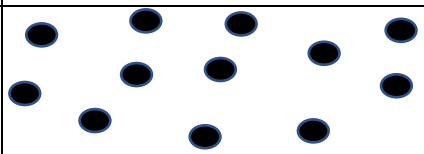
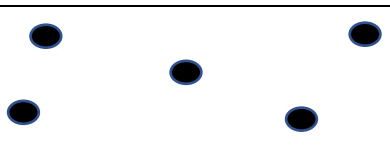
Problems faced by the government during a population census.

- Shortage of funds.
- Insecurity in a country.
- Poor transport and network.
- Wrong information given by some people.
- Shortage of skilled enumerators.

POPULATION DISTRIBUTION.

- Population distribution is the way people are spread in an area.
- The distribution of the population in East Africa varies from one area to another.
- Some areas in East Africa have very many people (are densely populated),some have a moderate number of people (optimum population) while others have very few people (sparsely populated)
- Dense population is the situation when an area has many people compared to the size of the land.
- Sparse population is the situation when an area has very few people compared to the size of the land.
- Optimum population is when the number of people living in an area can be well supported by the available resources.

Population distribution in different areas.

Area A	Area B	Area C
		
Dense population	Optimum population	Sparse population

Types of population distribution.

- Dense population.
- Sparse population.

SPARSE POPULATION

- Sparse population is when an area has very few people compared to the size of the land.

Areas that are sparsely populated.

- Semi-arid areas
- areas affected by civil wars
- steep slopes
- forested areas.
- rural areas
- areas affected by natural disasters.

Why the above areas are sparsely populated.

a) Semi-arid areas.

- The areas experience long dry seasons.
- They have infertile soils.
- The areas receive very little.
- They experience very high temperatures during day time.

b) swampy areas

- They face a lot of floods during the rainy season.
- They have dangerous aquatic animals that attack man.

c) Forested areas

- They have many disease vectors
- The government doesn't allow human settlement in such areas.

d) Steep slopes.

- They have poor transport network.
- They hinder mechanisation of agriculture.

e) Areas affected by civil wars.

- People run away from such areas in order to save their lives.

f) Rural areas.

- They have poor social services.
- They have few job opportunities.
- They have limited market for goods.

Factors that lead to low / sparse population in an area.

- Unreliable rainfall/drought.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases in an area.
- Poor social service delivery.
- Poor/infertile soils
- Outbreak of famine.
- Political instability/insecurity.
- Presence of natural disasters like floods, landslides

DENSE POPULATION.

- This is when an area has many people compared to the size of the land.

Areas that are densely populated.

- Around the shores of lakes
- Around river banks
- Urban areas (cities, towns and trading centres)
- Plateau areas
- Areas with favourable climate
- Areas with fertile grounds for crop growing.

Examples of densely populated areas.

- **Lake shores**
  - They have fertile soils for crop growing.
  - They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.
  - Presence of lakes promotes fishing.

❖ **River banks**

- They have fertile soils for crop growing.
- They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.
- Presence of rivers promotes fishing.

❖ **Urban areas**

- They have many job opportunities
- They have better social services.
- They have a large market for goods.

❖ **Plateau areas**

- They have fertile soils for crop growing.
- They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.
- Plateau areas have lakes and rivers which promote fishing.

❖ **Mountain slopes**

- They have fertile soils for crop growing.
- They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.
- They have plenty of minerals which promote mining.

❖ **Areas along the major roads.**

- Such areas usually have a large market for goods.
- There is easy access to social service centres.
- They have many trade opportunities.

Factors that lead to a dense/ high population.

- Reliable rainfall.
- Availability of employment opportunities.
- Urbanisation.
- Industrialization.
- Improved peace and security.
- Presence of natural resources.

Factors that influence population distribution.

- ❖ Rainfall distribution.
- ❖ Employment opportunities.
- ❖ Relief of an area.
- ❖ Social service provision.
- ❖ Government policy.
- ❖ Nature of the soil.
- ❖ Security level in the region/ Political stability.
- ❖ Urbanisation.

How the above factors influence the population distribution of an area.

Rainfall distribution/ climate.

- The areas that receive reliable rainfall are densely populated because they support farming. Areas that receive very little are sparsely populated because they can't support crop growing.

Nature of the soil.

- Areas that have fertile soils are densely populated because they support plant growth. Areas with infertile soils are sparsely populated because they can not support plant growth.

Vegetation distribution.

- Areas that have thick vegetation are not occupied by people because they harbour dangerous animals, vectors and pests.
- The areas with good vegetation cover like savannah grasslands are favourable for human settlement.

Relief.

- Steep slopes of mountains have few people due to land slides, soil erosion and poor transport.

- Plateau areas and gently sloping lands are densely populated due to fertile soils,good drainage and better transport networks.
- Valley areas and plains have a low population due to floods and high temperatures.

Social service provision.

- Areas with good social service provision are densely populated while those with poor social service provision are sparsely populated.

Government policy.

- The government stops people from settling in certain areas like game parks, game reserves, swamps making them sparsely populated.

Political stability.

- Areas that are politically stable are densely populated.
- People take refuge in more peaceful countries compared to those that experience wars.

Urbanisation.

- Developed areas like towns attract many people because they have good jobs and employment opportunities while rural areas are sparsely populated due to poor social services leading to rural-urban migration.

POPULATION DENSITY.

- This is the number of people living in an area per square kilometre.
- In East Africa, Rwanda has the biggest population density while Tanzania has the smallest.

Calculations of population density.

$$\text{Population density} = \frac{\text{total population (people)}}{\text{Total area (km}^2\text{)}}$$

Example:An area has a population of 600,000 people, living in an area of 300km^2,calculate the population density of that area.

$$\text{Population density} = \frac{\text{total population (people)}}{\text{Total area (km}^2\text{)}}$$

$$= \frac{600{,}000 \text{ people}}{300\text{km}^2}$$

$$= 200 \text{ people/km}^2$$

Therefore, the population density of that area is 200 people/km^2

Types of population density.

a) High population density.

- This is a large number of people living in an area compared to the available resources.

Areas with a High population density in East Africa.

- Shores and the coast
- Mountain slopes
- Major towns and cities like Mombasa, Kampala, Dar-es-salaam.

Advantages of High population density in an area.

- It creates a large market for goods.
- It leads to a large labour force in an area.
- It leads to high revenue collection in form of taxes.
- It promotes development in an area.
- It promotes proper utilisation of resources in an area.

Problems associated/ caused with a High population density.

- Unemployment.
- Shortage of food.
- Easy spread of communicable diseases.
- Development of slums.
- Poor hygienic condition leading to disease outbreak.
- Environmental degredation.
- High crime rate.

Solutions to problems associated with a High population density.

- ❖ People in urban areas should build storeyed buildings to solve a problem of land shortage.
- ❖ Government should provide better social services in rural areas to promote urban- rural migration.
- ❖ Empowering the youths to start small scale businesses (projects).
- ❖ By extending electricity to rural areas.
- ❖ Educating people to use modern methods of farming to increase food production.

b) Low population density.

- ✚ This is when an area has a small number of people compared to the available resources.

Advantages of low population density.

- People have enough land.
- There is low crime rate.
- There is enough accommodation in an area.
- It promotes conservation of the natural environment in an area.
- Communicable diseases do not easily spread from one homestead to another.

Disadvantages of low population density.

- There is low market for local goods or imported goods.
- There is low labour force.
- There is low tax base for the government.
- There is poor social service provision.
- There is limited social security.
- There is under utilisation of resources in an area.

Solutions to a low population census.

- By improving social services to attract more people.
- By setting up industries in an area.
- By encouraging mechanisation to increase food production.
- By encouraging people to marry many wives.





1. Give the meaning of each of the following;
   (i) Population
   (ii) Population growth
2. Give any three causes of high population growth in Uganda.
3. State any two advantages of a high population in an area.
4. Mention any two problems a country is likely to face as a result of having a large population.
5. Give any two economic benefits of a large population to the development of a country.
6. Mention any three natural disasters that may lead to the reduction in the number of people in an area.
7. Give any two ways the government can check the number of people in the country.

8. Name the body that is responsible for conducting a national census in Uganda.
9. Mention any three types of information that is collected by enumerators during the census.
10. Which ministry is responsible for conducting a national census in Uganda?
11. Give any one reason why a national census in Uganda is conducted after ten years.
12. State any three reasons why the government conducts a national census.
13. Mention any three problems faced by the enumerators during the census exercise.
14. State any three problems the government faces when conducting a national population census.
15. Give the meaning of Population distribution.
16. Mention any three factors that influence population distribution.
17. Give one reason why steep slopes of mountains are sparsely populated.
18. Mention any three factors that lead to a sparse population in an area.
19. State any one two reasons why slopes of most mountains in East Africa are densely populated.
20. Why are there many people living around the shores of Lake Victoria?
21. Mention any three examples of sparsely populated areas in East Africa.
22. Give the meaning of Population density.
23. Which East African country has the biggest population density?
24. Calculate the population density of town W which has a population of 4500 people living in an area of $90km^2$.
25. Give one way the government can encourage the settlement of people in rural areas.

EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 6

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers



For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Kakuru Dismus**

Ndagire Joan

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa.**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Six has been developed basing on the revised Primary Six Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organized, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Six in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the pupils.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts.

TEL: +256 771 623617 and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN EAST AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TERM ONE

Topic 1: East African Community (EAC)

Historical background of EAC

- Location of the East African Community member states using lines of latitude and lines of longitude……6
- Using the Prime meridian to tell the international time……9
- Formation of the East African Community……9
- Revival of the EAC……12
- Organs of the EAC……15
- Symbols of the EAC……17
- National symbols of the EAC member states……18

The People of East Africa

- Origin of human beings……25
- Sources of history……25

- Archaeological sites in East Africa.....28
- Stone age.....29
- Ethnic groups in East Africa.....31
- Migrations and settlement patterns in East Africa.....37
- Political organisation of different ethnic groups in East Africa.....42
- Social organisation of ethnic groups in East Africa.....48
- Economic organisation among different ethnic groups in East Africa.....52

Early visitors to East Africa

- The Arab traders 55
- Long distance trade and slave trade.....56
- European traders 61
- Christian missionaries in East Africa 61

Population in East Africa

- Population growth.....65
- Population census 66
- Population distribution 67
- Population density 70

TERM TWO.

Topic 2: Major resources of East Africa

- Types of resources 73
- Land as a resource 73
- Vegetation as a resource 74
- Animals as a resource 82
- Tourism industry in East Africa 86
- Climate as a resource 87
- Crop growing in East Africa.....91
- Livestock farming in East Africa 98
- Mountains as a resource 101
- Mineral resources in East Africa 104
- Lakes in East Africa 107
- Major rivers in East Africa 112
- Fishing in East Africa 115

Topic 3. Transport and Communication in East Africa.

- Road transport in East Africa.....121
- Water transport in East Africa 124
- Air transport in East Africa 125
- Pipeline transport 127
- Railway transport in East Africa 127
- Means of communication 130
- Radio communication 132
- Newspapers 133

- Television communication.....134
- Telephone communication 135
- Post office 136

TERM THREE.

Topic 4. The Road to Independence in East Africa.

- European explorers in East Africa 140
- The Portuguese explorers in East Africa 144
- Scramble for and partition of Africa 147
- Establishment of colonial rule in East Africa 148
- Colonial administrative systems in East Africa 152
- German rule in Tanganyika 153
- British rule in Kenya 155
- Colonial rule in Uganda 157
- Reactions to colonial rule in East Africa 162
- Rebellions against colonial rule in East Africa 162
- The struggle for independence in East Africa.....166
- The formation of political parties in East Africa 167
- Independence movement leaders in East Africa 171
- Effects of colonial rule in East Africa 173
- Post independence East Africa 174
- Leaders of East African countries since independence 175
- Challenges facing East African countries 178
- Democratic rule in East Africa 179

Topic 5. Responsible living in the East African environment.

- Introduction to the environment 189
- Environmental practices 189
- Sustainable use of the environment 191
- Waste management 193
- Environmental conservation 194
- Consequences of irresponsible living in the environment 196
- Climate change 198

TOPIC 4: THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA

EUROPEAN EXPLORATION IN EAST AFRICA

- **An explorer is a person who goes to a place of interest to find out more about it.**
- **Most Explorers who came to East Africa came from Europe.**
- **Explorers were the first group of Europeans to come to East Africa.**
- **The first explorers to reach the coast of East Africa were the Portuguese. They were led by Vasco da Gama.**
- **Most European explorers who came to East Africa wanted to find the source of River Nile**
- **Most European explorers who came to East Africa were sponsored by the Royal Geographical Society (RGS). It gave them food and medical supplies.**
- **Most Explorers who came to the interior of East Africa (Uganda) used the route through Bagamoyo in Tanzania.**

Why most European explorers who came to Uganda entered through Bagamoyo.

- **There was a direct route from Bagamoyo to Uganda.**
- **The route through Bagamoyo had friendly people.**

Qn: *Why was it difficult for explorers who travelled to Uganda to pass through Kenya?*

Why most European explorers who came to Uganda first went to Zanzibar.

- **To learn Kiswahili language.**
- **To get permission from the sultan of Zanzibar.**
- **To get porters to carry their supplies.**

Reasons for the coming of Explorers to East Africa.

- **They wanted to find the source of River Nile.**
- **They wanted to study the geography of East Africa.**
- **They wanted to pave way for the coming of the colonialists.**
- **They wanted to open up away for the missionaries.**

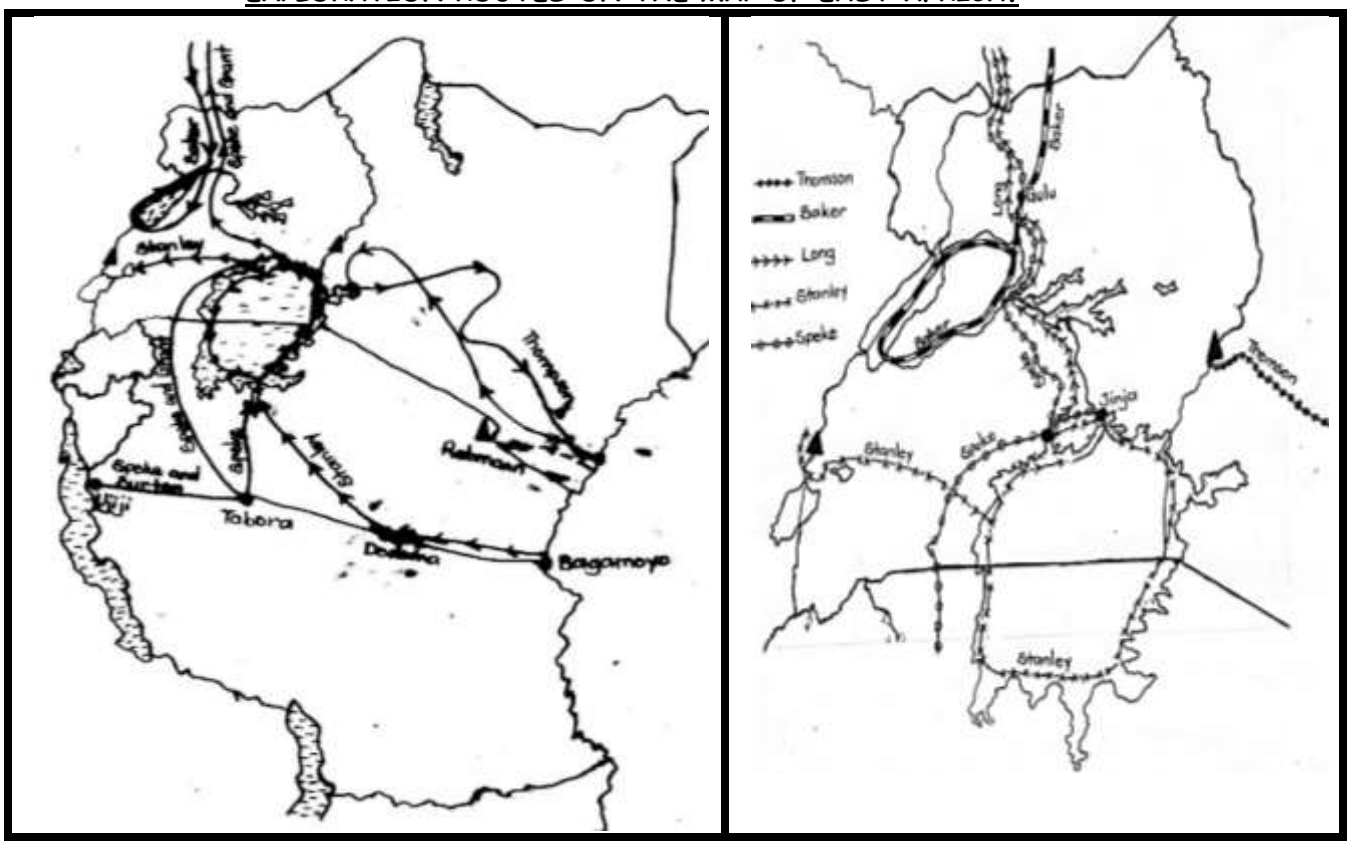
Problems that were faced by the European explorers in East Africa.

- **Walking long and tiresome journeys.**
- **Attacks from dangerous animals.**
- **Shortage of supplies like food, medicine.**
- **Attacks from tropical diseases.**
- **Attacks from hostile people.**
- **Difficulty in communication with the natives.**

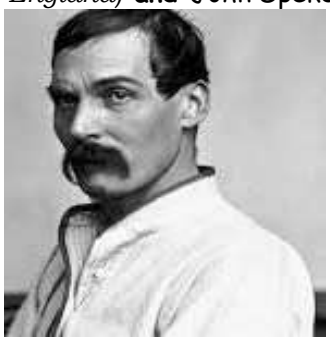
Famous European explorers in East Africa.

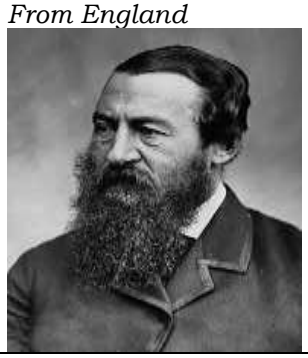
- **Vasco da Gama.**
- **John Speke.**
- **Richard Burton**
- **Chaille Long**
- **James Grant.**
- **Henry Morton Stanley.**
- **Sir Samuel Baker.**
- **Joseph Thomson.**
- **Jakob Erhardt**
- **Johannes Rebmann**
- **Johann Ludwig krapf**
- **Count teleki**
- **Dr.David Livingstone.**

EXPLORATION ROUTES ON THE MAP OF EAST AFRICA.



Major discoveries made by famous European explorers in East Africa

John Hanning Speke *From England.* *With Burton in 1857* *With Grant in 1860* 	• **Lake Victoria** • **The source of River Nile.** • **Ripon falls** **Note** - *John Speke was the first European explorer to come to Uganda (in 1862).* - *He named the **Ripon falls** at the source of river Nile after Lord Ripon who was the president of the RGS by then.* - *He also named **lake Victoria** after Queen Victoria of England.*
Richard Burton *(from England)* **and** John Speke 	• **Lake Tanganyika** ❖ **They were sent by the Royal Geographical Society to find the source of river Nile** ❖ **They were the first European explorers to travel to the interior of East Africa.** ❖ **They entered into East Africa through Bagamoyo, via Tabora to Ujiji on Lake Tanganyika.** ❖ **On their return, Burton fell sick and remained at Tabora. Speke continued northwards and came across a great water body which he believed to be the source of River Nile.**

James grant and John Speke. 	❖ **The two were sent to find the source of river Nile.** ❖ **While at Karagwe,Grant fell sick and remained at Karagwe under the care of king Rumanika who welcomed them to his kingdom.** ❖ **Speke moved northwards and entered into Buganda.** ❖ **He was welcomed by Kabaka Muteesa I in 1862.** ❖ **Speke gave gifts of clothes, rifles, knives and beads to the king.** ❖ **Speke moved eastwards and reached the source of River Nile on 28th July, 1862.** ❖ **Speke was later joined by Grant ant the two followed river Nile moving towards its mouth in the North.** ❖ **They met another explorer called Sir Samuel Baker at Gondokoro in Sudan.**
Sir Samuel Baker. *From England* 	• **Murchison falls** • **Lake Albert** ***Note:*** ✓ *John Speke and James Grant met Sir Samuel Baker at Gondokoro in South Sudan.* ✓ *Baker with his wife Jane Baker wanted to find the source of River Nile from its mouth in Egypt.* ✓ *He saw and named lake albert in 1864.* ✓ ***Lake Albert** was named after the husband of Queen Victoria of England.* ✓ *He saw and named the **Murchison falls** after the president of RGS.*
Henry Morton Stanley *A Welsh from Wales* 	• **Mountain Rwenzori.** • **Lake George.** • **Lake Edward.** ***Note:*** ❖ **Stanley came to Africa in three different occasions.** **<u>Stanley's 1st journey in 1871.</u>** ❖ **He came to look for Dr. David Livingstone.** ❖ **He was sponsored by two newspapers namely;-** - **Daily telegraph.** - **New York Herald tribune.** **<u>Stanley's 2nd journey in 1874.</u>** **He was sent to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **He used his canoe he had named Lady Alice to circumnavigate Lake Victoria.** **Henry Morton Stanley circumnavigated lake Victoria to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **In 1875, Henry Morton Stanley reached Kabaka Muteesa I's palace and requested him to allow missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **On Kabaka's request, Henry Morton Stanley wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting Christian missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **The letter was taken by <u>Linant de Bellefonds.</u> And it appeared in the Daily Telegraph newspaper.** **Note:**

	✓ ***Linant de Bellefonds*** *arrived in the Kabaka's palace in April 1875. This is where he also met Henry Morton Stanley.* ✓ *He collaborated with Stanley's idea of inviting the missionaries.* ✓ *Bellefonds was killed in Sudan on 26th August 1875 and the letter was sent to* ***Charles Gordon****, the governor of the Equatorial province, who sent it to the Queen of England.* **Henry Morton Stanley then moved westwards and saw Mountain Rwenzori and named it "the mountains of the moon" This was because of the snow on its peak which glitters like a moon.** ❖ **He also saw and named lake Edward and lake George.** ❖ **He then continued westwards through Democratic Republic of Congo and returned to Europe.** **<u>Stanley's 3rd journey (1887-1890).</u>** ❖ **He came to rescue Emin Pasha from the Equatorial province.**
Joseph Thomson *From Scotland* 	• **Mountain Elgon** • **Lake Nakuru.** • **Lake Baringo.** • **Thomson's falls (Nyahururu falls)** **Note:** ✓ *Thomson was sent to find the shortest route from the coast to lake Victoria.* ✓ *Thomson was the first European to cross the Nandi and Masai land successfully.*
Johann Ludwig Krapf *From Germany*	• **Mountain Kenya** • **River Tana**
Johannes Rebmann *From Germany in 1846*	• **Mountain Kilimanjaro**
Jakob Erhardt	• **He attempted to draw the first map of East Africa.**
Dr. David Livingstone *From Scotland.*	• **River Zambezi** • **Victoria falls along river Zambezi.** • **Lake Mweru along the border of Zambia and DRC.** • **Lake Bangweulu in Zambia** • **Lake Nyasa (Malawi)** • **River Lualaba** **Note:** ✓ *Livingstone was a doctor, an explorer and a missionary.* ✓ *He was the greatest explorer in Africa because he spent a lot of his life time exploring the African continent from 1841 till his death in 1873.*
Charles Chaille Long **(***from America***)**	❖ **He was the first European to see lake Kyoga.** • **He arrived in Buganda in 1874 and became the second European explorer to see Lake Victoria.**
Count Teleki	❖ **Lake Rudolf (lake Turkana).** ❖ **Lake Stephanie in Ethiopia.**

<u>Notable facts about explorers in East Africa.</u>

✓ ***<u>Vasco da Gama</u>*** *was the first European explorer to come to East Africa.*

- ✓ *John Speke and Richard Burton were the first European explorers to travel to the interior of East Africa.*
- ✓ *The Portuguese were the first explorers to come to East Africa.*

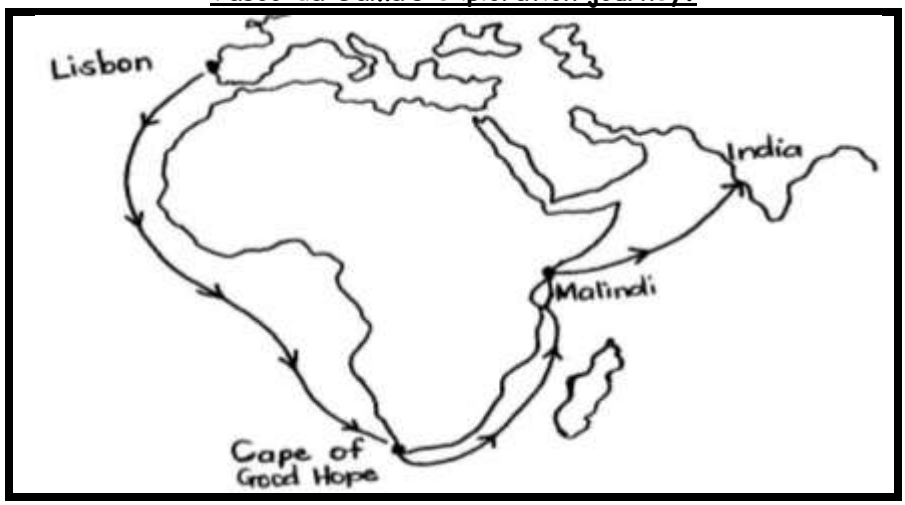
THE PORTUGUESE EXPLORERS.

- **The Portuguese were the first explorers to come to East Africa.**
- **The Portuguese explorers wanted to find the shortest sea route to India.**
- **<u>Prince Henry the navigator</u> sponsored the journeys of most Portuguese explorers to Africa.**
- **He also started a school for navigation at Sagres which trained navigators.**
- **The Portuguese wanted to find the shortest sea route to India because they wanted to get silk and spices from the far East.**

Portuguese explorers who came to East Africa.

Vasco da Gama 	• **He was sent to continue from where Bartholomew Diaz had reached.** • **He sailed from Lisbon, Portugal in 1497 and reached Calcutta, India on 20th May 1498.** • **Da Gama became the first Portuguese sailor to find a sea route to India.** • **He named the Cape of Good Hope because he had got hope of reaching India.** **Note:** • ***The Arabs along the East African coast didn't welcome Vasco da Gama because:*** ❖ *They hated Christianity which the Europeans were spreading.* ❖ *They thought that the Europeans would interfere with their trade.* ***Sultan Seyyid Ali of Malindi*** *welcomed Vasco da Gama.* *He gave him an Indian captain called* ***Ahmed bin Majid*** *to direct his ships to India.* ❖ **Da Gama was the first European to sail around the coast of Africa and find the sea route to India.** ❖ **After Vasco Da Gama had returned to Portugal from his first trip to India, the Portuguese decided to capture the Arab settlements at the East African coast.**

<u>Vasco da Gama's exploration journey.</u>



<u>Effects of the da Gama's sea route to India.</u>

- ❖ **It created more trade opportunities for Portugal.**
- ❖ **It enabled the Portuguese to set up a trading empire in the east.**
- ❖ **The Portuguese conquered the East African Coast.**

PORTUGUESE CONQUEST OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST.

- The Portuguese conquest of the east African coast began in 1500 when Pedro Alvares Cabral unsuccessfully tried to capture Sofala.
- In 1502 Vasco da Gama attacked and captured the headquarters of the Zenj empire.
- This marked the beginning of the Portuguese conquest of the East African coast.
- The Portuguese established their headquarters in Mozambique and Mombasa was their major coastal town.
- They divided their empire into provinces for easy administration, and each province was under the rule of a Governor.
- The Portuguese introduced Christianity which caused a lot of hatred from the coastal people who were already under Arab influence.
- The Portuguese administrators were very harsh, corrupt, over taxed traders and always isolated themselves from the natives.
- They controlled the East African coast for 200 years and their rule declined.

Why the Portuguese conquered the East African coast.

(Why the Portuguese came and settled along the East African coast)

- They wanted to spread Christianity along the East African coast.
- They wanted to control the profitable trade along the coast of East Africa.
- They wanted to create a resting base for their sailors.
- They wanted to fight Muslims domination in East Africa.
- The East African coast had good natural harbours for trade and defense.
- They wanted to control the coastal states and make them pay tributes to Portugal.

Why the Portuguese succeeded in conquering the East African coast.

- The Portuguese had superior weapons.
- They had well trained soldiers.
- They used surprise night attacks.
- Disunity among the coastal towns.

Reasons for the decline of the Portuguese rule in East Africa.

- Corrupt Portuguese officials.
- Poor communication with the home government.
- Constant attacks from the Arabs.
- The Portuguese administrators along the coast were very few.
- The coming of the British and the French also weakened their rule.

Effects of Portuguese rule along the coast.

a) Positive effects.

- They built Fort Jesus which is now a major tourist attraction.
- They spread Christianity along the coast.
- They introduced new crops e.g. Pawpaws, pineapples.
- They introduced new methods of farming.
- They added new words to Kiswahili language.
- East Africa was linked to Europe and India.

Note:

- ✓ *Fort Jesus was built for protection against enemies.*
- ✓ *Fort Jesus still stands today as an important historical monument which attracts tourists.*

b) Negative effects.

- It led to decline of coastal trade.
- They imposed heavy taxes on traders which decreased trade.
- It led to destruction of coastal towns e.g. Kilwa and Mombasa which were burnt.
- The coastal states lost their independence to the Portuguese.

Effects of the coming of European explorers to East Africa.

- ❖ Africa was made known to the rest of the world.
- ❖ They renamed physical features e.g. Lake Victoria instead of Nalubaale.
- ❖ They paved way for the coming of the missionaries and the colonialists.

How exploration work led to European colonisation of Africa.

- ❖ Explorers made reports about the rich natural resources of East Africa which attracted the colonialists.

EUROPEAN COLONIALISTS IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Colonialism** is the practice by which a powerful / superior country controls a weaker / inferior country.
- **A colonialist** is a person who controls an inferior country on behalf of his home country.
- **A colony** is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.
- **A protectorate** is a country which is controlled and protected by a powerful country for economic gains with no aim of having permanent settlement.

Reasons for the coming of the colonialists to East Africa.

- ❖ They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
- ❖ They wanted to invest their surplus capital.
- ❖ They wanted to find market for their processed goods.
- ❖ The desire for political pride.
- ❖ To get more space for resettling the excess population.

European countries which sent colonialists to East Africa

- Britain
- Germany
- Belgium.

Examples of famous colonialists in East Africa

- Dr.Carl Peters.
- Capt. Frederick Lugard
- Sir Gerald Portal
- Sir William Mackinnon
- Sir Harry Johnson
- Sir Samuel Baker
- Colonel Henry Colville
- Sir Hesketh Bell.



Dr.Carl Peters



Sir William Mackinnon

Sir William Mackinnon.

- Mackinnon was a Scottish businessman.
- In 1888 he started the Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO)
- The company's main activity was trading.
- However,the Company was also expected to rule the British territories in East Africa. In 1890, the Company sent Capt. Frederick Lugard as representative to Uganda.
- IBEACO also built many transport and lines of communication in East Africa. These include the Uganda Railway which was begun in 1896 at the coastal town of Mombasa in Kenya.

Dr.Carl Peters.

- He was a German colonialist.
- He played a leading role in the establishment of German rule in Tanganyika, Rwanda and Burundi.
- He was the leader of the German East Africa Company (GEACO) which had been formed to carry out trade in East Africa.
- The company helped to administer Germany colonies in East Africa.

- He signed treaties with chiefs in the interior including Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda with whom he signed an agreement in 1890.

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.

- Scramble for Africa was the struggle among European countries to have territories in Africa.
- Partition of Africa was the peaceful sharing of African countries amongst European countries.

European countries which scrambled for African territories.

- Great Britain
- France
- Germany
- Portugal
- Spain
- Italy
- Belgium

Reasons for scramble for Africa (Why European countries wanted colonies in Africa)

- They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
- They wanted to invest their surplus capital.
- They wanted to find market for their processed goods.
- To get more space for resettling excess population.
- The desire for political pride.

The BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884

- This was a meeting in which European colonial powers discussed the partition of Africa.
- The conference was held in Berlin, Germany.
- The conference was called by king Leopold II of Belgium.
- The Berlin conference was chaired by Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck, the Prime minister of Germany by then.
- It was held purposely to find peaceful means of partitioning Africa (sharing African countries amongst European powers).



Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck

Effects of Partition of Africa.

- It led to creation of new states.
- Africans lost their independence.
- Some people lost their historical origin.
- It led to separation of communities.

✓ **Note:** *-As a result of partition of Africa, Uganda and Kenya were given to* ***Britain*** *while Tanzania, Rwanda and Burundi were given to* ***Germany.***

Results of the Berlin Conference.

- It led to establishment of colonial spheres of influence in Africa.
- It brought order to the acquisition of territories in Africa.
- It led to creation of new boundaries of some countries in Africa.

The Anglo-German agreement of 1886.

- It was the first agreement to be signed between Germany and Britain over their spheres of influence in East Africa.
- In this agreement, Tanzania was given to Germany while Kenya was given to Britain.
- The sultan of Zanzibar was given a 10 mile (16km) coastal strip, while Germany and Britain divided the hinterland between themselves.
- Uganda, Rwanda and Burundi were not partitioned in this agreement.

The Anglo-German agreement of 1890.(Heligoland treaty)

- This agreement gave Britain influence over Uganda in exchange for the Heligoland islands in Europe with Germany.
- It is sometimes called the Heligoland treaty because Britain handed over the Heligoland islands to Germany in exchange for Uganda.
- Rwanda and Burundi became part of the Germany territory in East Africa.

Results of the Heligoland treaty.

- Uganda became a British territory.
- Germany surrendered Witu land to Britain.
- Britain surrendered Heligoland islands to Germany.
- Zanzibar and Pemba were recognised as British protectorates.

ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

Methods used by the colonialists to establish their rule in East Africa.

- Use of military force.
- Through signing agreements/ treaties.
- Through divide and rule policy (fueling existing misunderstandings)
- Use of trading companies like IBEACo, GEACo.
- Through missionary work.
- Use of collaborators.

Problems faced during the establishment of colonial rule

- Limited funds.
- Resistance from the natives.
- Absence of a centralised system of administration in some areas.
- Difficulty in communication with the African natives.
- Tribal wars in some communities.

(a) **Use of military force.**

- It was mainly used in areas where the East African natives resisted against colonial rule.
- This method was mainly used by the Germans in Tanganyika which made them to be hated by the natives.

(b) **Signing of treaties.**

- A treaty is a formal agreement between two or more people.
- Treaties were signed in areas where the African natives voluntarily accepted colonial rule.

Colonial agreements that were signed in Uganda.

- The 1894 Protectorate treaty
- The 1900 Buganda agreement
- The 1900 Tooro agreement.
- The 1901 Ankole agreement.
- The 1933 Bunyoro agreement.

(i) **The 1894 Protectorate treaty**

- It was the first colonial agreement to be signed in Uganda.
- It was signed between Kabaka Mwanga and Sir Gerald Portal.
- It was known as the protectorate treaty because the British agreed to protectorate Buganda and the entire Uganda from other colonial powers.

(ii) **The 1900 Buganda Agreement**

- The 1900 Buganda Agreement was signed between Buganda kingdom and the British protectorate government
- It was signed to strengthen British Authority over Buganda kingdom
- By the time this agreement was signed, Kabaka Daudi Chwa II was the king but was still an infant

- **By the time of the Buganda Agreement, Kabaka Mwanga had been exiled by the British to Seychelles island in Indian ocean.**

Signatories of the 1900 Buganda agreement.

- **Sir Harry Johnston (on behalf of the British Protectorate government).**
- **Sir Apollo Kaggwa (on behalf of Buganda kingdom).**

Note:

- ✓ ***Kabaka Mwanga*** *was unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was in exile*
- ✓ ***Kabaka Daudi Chwa II*** *was unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was still an infant/ young*
- ✓ *Kabaka Daudi Chwa ruled Buganda with the help of the regents.*
- ✓ ***A Regent*** *is a person who is appointed to rule on behalf of an infant king.*

Regents of Kabaka Daudi Chwa.

- ✓ *Sir Apollo Kaggwa*
- ✓ *Stanslas Mugwanya*
- ✓ *Zakaria Kisingiri*

Terms of the 1900 Buganda Agreement

- **Land**
- **Governance**
- **Taxation**

Recommendations of the 1900 Buganda Agreement.

- ❖ **Gun and hut taxes were to be introduced.**
- ❖ **Buganda land was to be divided into crown land and mailo land.**
- ❖ **Kabaka's powers were to be reduced and added to the lukiiko.**
- ❖ **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was to be changed to His Highness.**
- ❖ **Buganda kingdom was to be enlarged and divided into 20 counties.**
- ❖ **The number of members on the Lukiiko was to be increased.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Mailo land*** *was given to the kabaka and his chiefs while* ***crown land*** *was given to the British protectorate government.*

  Why the British colonialists had to be given the crown land.
- ✓ *To get land for building schools, hospitals, churches, administrative offices etc.*

Effects of the 1900 Buganda Agreement

- ❖ **Gun and hut taxes were introduced**
- ❖ **Buganda land was divided into crown land and mailo land**
- ❖ **Kabaka's powers were reduced and given to the lukiiko**
- ❖ **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was changed to His Highness**
- ❖ **Buganda kingdom was enlarged and divided into 20 counties**
- ❖ **The number of members on the Lukiiko was increased.**

(iii) Tooro Agreement of 1900

- **The Agreement was signed between omukama Kasagama of Tooro and Sir Gerald Portal on behalf of the British.**
- **This Agreement made Tooro lose her independence to the British.**
- **The agreement led to the introduction of hut and gun taxes in Tooro land**

Effects of the 1900 Tooro Agreement.

- ❖ **Hut and gun taxes were introduced.**
- ❖ **Crown land was set aside and become part of the British government.**
- ❖ **Tooro became part of Buganda protectorate.**
- ❖ **Tooro was officially separated from Bunyoro.**
- ❖ **Omukama was recognised as the traditional ruler of Tooro.**
- ❖ **Tooro boundaries were defined and demarcated.**

(iv) Bunyoro Agreement of 1933

- It was signed between Sir Bernard Henry Bourdillon on behalf of the British protectorate government and Omukama Tito Gafabusa Winyi II.
- It was signed to strengthen British rule in Bunyoro region.

(v) The 1901 Ankole Agreement

- It was signed between Omugabe Kahaya of Ankole and Sir Fredrick Jackson on behalf of the British
- In this agreement, hut and gun taxes were introduced.
- The counties of Igara, Kajara, Bahweju, and Bunyaruguru were taken away from Bunyoro and added to Ankole

Effects of the 1901 Ankole Agreement

- Ankole kingdom was enlarged. eg Buhweju, Igara, Kajara and Bunyaruguru were added to it.
- Hut and gun taxes were introduced.
- Ankole became part of Uganda protectorate.

(c) USE OF COLLABORATORS.

- Collaborators were the East African natives who helped the colonialists in establishing their rule in different parts of East Africa.

Reasons why some East African natives collaborated with the colonialists.

- They wanted to get favour from the colonialists.
- Kings and chiefs wanted to get military support.
- Some wanted to enrich themselves.
- Some feared the military strength of the colonialists.

Roles played by the collaborators.

- They helped in signing colonial agreements.
- They helped in enforcing colonial policies.
- They acted as interpreters for the colonialists.
- They provided information to the colonialists.

People who collaborated with the British.

- Semei Kakungulu.
- Nabongo Mumia of Wanga.
- Nuwa Mbaguta.
- Chief Lenana of the Masai.
- Chief Merere of Sangu in Tanzania.
- Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- Omukama Kasagama.



Semei Kakungulu



Nuwa Mbaguta



Sir Apollo Kaggwa



Omukama Kasagama

SEMEI KAKUNGULU.

- Semei Kakungulu brought the Eastern parts of Uganda under colonial rule.
- He introduced the Buganda system of administration in Eastern Uganda.
- He encouraged cash crop growing in Eastern Uganda. This helped to increase household income of the people of Eastern Uganda.
- He encouraged the people of Eastern Uganda to plant trees (Mvule trees).
- He constructed roads in Eastern Uganda which helped to ease British administration.

- He appointed Buganda agents to become chiefs in Eastern and Northern Uganda.
- He helped Colonel Colville to capture Kabaka Mwanga and Omukama Kabalega in Lango 1n 1899 and were exiled to Seychelles islands.
  - ***Note***:-*Semei Kakungulu tried to extend British rule in North Eastern Uganda (Karamoja) but he failed. This was because the people in North Eastern Uganda were hostile. The British also never had interest in the dry area of Karamoja since it couldn't favour crop growing.*

Ways Semei kakungulu managed to establish British rule in Eastern Uganda

- He built roads in Eastern Uganda
- He built administrative posts in Eastern Uganda
- He signed treaties with the local chiefs

NUWA MBAGUTA

- He was the Prime minister of Ankole.
- He extended British rule in Western Uganda
- He encouraged the building of feeder roads in Ankole.
- He planted trees in Ankole and educated people on their importance.
- He fought against illiteracy by supporting the building of schools in Ankole

OMUKAMA KASAGAMA.

- He was he king of Tooro.
- He welcomed the British to his kingdom.
- The British under Capt.Lugard gave him military support to defeat Omukama Kabalega and restored him onto his throne.

NABONGO MUMIA.

- He was the king of the Luhya people of Wanga kingdom.
- He signed treaties which helped top put Wanga kingdom under the British rule.

Reasons why some East African natives collaborated with the colonialists.

- They wanted to get favour from the colonialists.
- Kings and chiefs wanted to get military support.
- Some wanted to enrich themselves.
- Some feared the military strength of the colonialists.

Roles played by the collaborators.

- They helped in signing colonial agreements.
- They helped in enforcing colonial policies.
- They acted as interpreters for the colonialists.
- They provided information to the colonialists.

(d) How missionary work led to colonisation of East Africa.

- Missionary teachings caused divisions among people which weakened the African societies.
- Missionary teachings softened the hearts of the Africans which made them warmly welcome the colonialists.
- Missionaries called their home governments for protection.
- They acted as interpreters for the Africans and the colonialists.
- They signed treaties which were used by the colonialists to take over colonies.
- They educated and created a class of collaborators.
- They supplied information used by colonialists to improve their rule.

(e) Through trading companies. eg. IBEACO, GEACO

- The colonialists at first used trading companies in their administration. This was because the colonial governments were yet ready to take direct control of their colonies.
- For example on 3rd September 1888 the British company was recorgnised and given a royal charter under the name Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO) to administer Kenya and Uganda.

Trading companies that operated in East Africa include;

- Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO)
- German East Africa Company (GEACO)

Reasons why the colonialists ended company rule in East Africa.

- ❖ The companies had few administrators.
- ❖ They had opposition from missionaries and Africans.
- ❖ They lacked enough funds to meet administration costs.

EAST AFRICA UNDER COLONIAL RULE.

Colonial administrative systems that were used in East Africa.
(Methods used by the colonialists to administer East African countries)

In East Africa, European colonialists mainly used two systems of administration.
These were;

- Direct rule
- Indirect rule

i) DIRECT RULE

- This was the system of administration where the colonialists ruled the natives directly by themselves.
- The colonialists took direct control of their territories.
- Under this system, the colonialists collected taxes directly from the natives and also supervised the growing of cash crops.
- The German colonialists used Direct rule to administer Tanzania.

Reasons why Direct rule was used.

- ❖ The colonialists wanted to promote their culture.
- ❖ They wanted to show their superiority over the Africans.
- ❖ They wanted to exploit resources of their countries of control.

Effects of Direct rule

a) On the Africans

- ❖ Local leaders lost control over their territories.
- ❖ It led to over exploitation of Africa's resources.
- ❖ It limited the provision of social services.
- ❖ It was harsh and oppressive to the natives.

b) On the Colonialists.

- ❖ It increased rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It increased colonial expenditure.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the East African natives and the colonialists.
- ❖ It made it very difficult for some colonial policies to be implemented.

ii) INDIRECT RULE.

- This was the system of colonial administration where local leaders were used to rule the natives on behalf of the colonialists.
- In this system, local chiefs and kings took control of colonies on behalf of the colonialists.
- Local leaders encouraged and supervised the growing of cash crops and collected taxes on behalf of the colonialists.
- It was mainly used by the British in Uganda.

Reasons why the colonialists used Indirect rule.

- ❖ To control rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It was cheap in terms of paying local leaders.
- ❖ They wanted to increase manpower for the colonialists.
- ❖ They wanted to ease communication with their subjects.

Advantages of Indirect rule.

a) To the Africans.

- ❖ Local leaders learnt new methods of administration.
- ❖ It preserved the cultural practices of the natives.
- ❖ Kingdoms and chiefdoms were retained.

b) To the Colonialists.

- ❖ It was cheap to pay local leaders.
- ❖ It reduced rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It made communication between the natives and the colonialists easy.

Disadvantages of Indirect rule.

- ❖ It promoted hatred by the natives towards local leaders.
- ❖ It caused divisions among the natives.
- ❖ Native leaders were used as puppets by the colonialists.

GERMAN RULE IN TANGANYIKA.

- Tanganyika was at first ruled by German East Africa Company (GEACO) from 1887-1891 under the German administrator called Carl Peters.
- The administrative base of GEACO was at Bagamoyo.
- Later, the German government took over the administration of Tanganyika.
- The name that was given to Tanganyika under the German rule was German East Africa.

Roles of the German East Africa Company (GEACO) in Tanganyika.

- ❖ It controlled Tanganyika on behalf of the German government.
- ❖ It collected taxes from the leaders and ports.
- ❖ It built the first railway line in East Africa called Tanga-Korogwe railway.
- ❖ It carried out trade in agricultural produce.

Reasons why the German government ended company rule in Tanganyika.

- ❖ The company had few administrators.
- ❖ The company lacked enough funds to set up effective administration.
- ❖ The company had opposition from missionaries and Africans.

Changes made by the German government in the administration of Tanganyika.

- ❖ They introduced direct rule in Tanganyika.
- ❖ It transferred the administrative headquarters of the German colonial government from Bagamoyo to Dar-es-salaam
- ❖ The Germans also introduced a system of indirect rule in areas that had strong centralised traditional governments eg. Karagwe.
- ❖ It appointed the Akidas (chiefs) and the Jumbes (sub chiefs) to help them in the administration.
  - -Jumbes were headmen or leaders of clans or small groups.
  - -Akidas were usually Arabs or Swahilis.
- ❖ The Akidas collected taxes and supervised the growing of cash crops.

Why the Germans transferred the administrative offices from Bagamoyo to Dar-es-salaam.

- Dar-es-salaam had good natural harbours.
- Dar-es-salaam was well positioned for trade as compared to Bagamoyo.

Characteristics of German rule in Tanganyika.

- ❖ There was forced labour.
- ❖ There was high taxation of the Africans.
- ❖ Africans were denied their rights.
- ❖ Africans were denied respect by the Germans.

Reasons why German rule was hated (unpopular) in Tanganyika.

- **The Germans were harsh and cruel to the Africans.**
- **The Germans stopped Africans from growing their cash crops.**
- **They also forced Africans to work on their plantations with little or no pay.**
- **The Germans had no respect for African natives.**
- **The Germans set up rules that denied Africans their rights.**

The First World war and The End of German rule in Tanganyika.

- **World war I began in August 1914 and ended in 1918.**
- **It was started by German and her allies against Britain and her allies.**
- **The war started in Europe but spread in other parts of the world where the leading colonial powers had colonised.**
- **East Africa got involved in the war when German attacked British territories in East Africa.**
- **Many East African natives were recruited in order to defend themselves and their territories from the enemy attacks.**
- **Eventually, Germany was defeated.**
- **The League of Nations was an international organisation that was formed to prevent outbreak of another world war.**
- **It punished Germany by taking away all her colonies in Africa including Tanganyika.**
- **The League of nations gave German East Africa (Tanganyika) to Britain to rule it as a mandate territory. German East Africa was renamed Tanganyika.**
- **Rwanda and Burundi were given to Belgium. This was because Democratic Republic of Congo was a Belgian colony.**
- **Today Rwanda and Burundi use French as their official language. This is because they were ruled Belgians who speak French.**

Note:

- ✓ *European governments which were given mandate territories were meant to rule them for the good of the natives, till they were ready for their independence.*
- ✓ ***Mandate territories*** *were the former colonies of Germany that were given to other European countries by the League of Nations after world war I.*
- ✓ *Tanganyika was a mandate territory of the British while Rwanda and Burundi were mandate territories of the Belgians.*
- ✓ *East African countries were involved in the war because their colonial masters took men to work as soldiers and porters in the war zones.*

Effects of the world war in East Africa.

- **It led to death of many people.**
- **The Germans were forced to leave their farms in Tanganyika.**
- **It led to outbreak of famine in East Africa.**
- **International trade stopped.**
- **It led to destruction of property.**
- **East Africa came under British control except Rwanda and Burundi which went to Belgium.**
- **Many families suffered because their men had died.**

TANGANYIKA UNDER THE BRITISH RULE.

- **Britain took over German East Africa as a mandate territory of league of nations in 1919.**
- **The name changed from German East Africa to Tanganyika.**
- **Britain ruled Tanganyika for the good of the natives.**

Steps taken by the British to end the German influence in Tanganyika.

- **English replaced as the official language.**

- ❖ The British discouraged white settlement and developed Tanganyika as a black man's country.
- ❖ German settlers and missionaries were expelled.
- ❖ Traditional chiefs replaced the Jumbes and Akidas.
- ❖ The country's name was changed from German East Africa to Tanganyika.

British colonial Governors in Tanganyika.

- Sir Horace Byatt 1916-1925.
- Sir Donald Cameron 1925-1931.
- Sir Stewart Symes 1931-1934.
- Sir Harold MacMichael 1934-1938.
- Sir Mark Young 1938-1945
- Sir Francis Jackson 1942-1945.
- Sir William Battershill 1945-1949.
- Sir Edward Twining 1949-1958.
- Sir Richard Turnbull 1958-1961.

Sir Horace Byatt 1916-1925.

- ➢ He was appointed as the first British governor of Tanganyika.
- ➢ He was criticised for refusing to favour European settlers or give them a share in the government.

Sir Donald Cameron 1925-1931.

- ➢ He established indirect rule in local government in Tanganyika.
- ➢ He appointed local chiefs with powers to collect taxes, settle disputes and carryout some administrative duties.
- ➢ He brought the settlers in to share in the government.
- ➢ He established the Legislative council (LEGCO) in 1926.
- ➢ However, he excluded the Africans whom he believed were not ready to share in the national government.

Sir Richard Turnbull 1958-1961.

- ➢ He was the last British governor in Tanganyika.
- ➢ He was the governor at the time of independence.

BRITISH RULE IN KENYA.

- During colonial rule Kenya was known as British East Africa.
- It was declared a British protectorate in 1895 by Sir A.H Hardicofe and later named a British colony in 1905.
- A colony is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.
- Kenya was a colony of the British in East Africa.

Steps that were taken to make Kenya a colony of the British.

- ❖ They built the Kenya-Uganda railway.
- ❖ They encouraged Whites settlement in Kenya.

Colonial administrators in British East Africa.

Commissioners.

- Sir Charles Eliot 1900-1904
- Sir Donald Stewart 1904-1905

Governors

- Sir James Sadler 1905-1909
- Sir Percy Girouard 1909-1912

- **Sir Henry Belfield 1912-1917**
- **Sir Charles Calvert Bowring 1917-1919**
- **Sir Edward Northey 1919-1922**
- **Sir Robert Coryndon 1922-1925**
- **Sir Edward Grigg 1925-1930**
- **Sir Henry Moore 1930-1931**
- **Sir Joseph Byrne 1931-1936**
- **Sir Armigel Wade 1936-1937**
- **Sir Robert Brooke-Popham 1937-1940**
- **Sir Henry Moore 1940-1944**
- **Sir Philip Mitchell 1944-1952**
- **Sir Evelyn Baring 1952-1959**
- **Sir Walter Coutts 4th Oct 1959-23rd Oct 1959**
- **Sir Patrick Renison 1959-1962**
- **Sir Eric Griffith-Jones 1962-4th Jan 1963**
- **Sir Malcolm MacDonald 4th Jan 1963-12th Dec 1963**

THE WHITE SETTLERS IN KENYA.

- **The first white settler to come to Kenya arrived in 1886.**
- **They were mainly the European farmers and they settled in the Kenya Highlands which were also known as Whites highlands.**
- **Lord Delamere encouraged the coming of white settlers in Kenya.**
- **The Uganda railway was constructed in order to encourage the Whites settlement in Kenya.**
- **The White settlers displaced the Kikuyu who were originally living in the Kenya highlands. This resulted into the Mau Mau rebellion.**

Why the White settlers settled in the Kenya highlands.

- **The area had fertile soils for crop growing.**
- **The area receives reliable rainfall which favours crop crowing.**

Dairy farming is mainly practised in the Kenya highlands due to the:

- **Presence of plenty of pasture for animals.**
- **Presence of cool climate which favours dairy farming.**
- **Absence of many disease vectors in the Kenya highlands.**

Effects of the coming the White settlers in Kenya.

- **The natives lost their fertile land.**
- **Many Kenyans were forced to provide forced labour on the white settlers' plantations.**
- **They discouraged Africans from growing crops.**
- **It led to outbreak of Mau Mau rebellion.**
- **It led to displacement of the natives.**
- **There was a lot of discrimination against the Africans through the colour bar policy.**
- **The colonial government attended to interest of settlers at the expense of Africans.**

Note:

- ***Colour bar policy*** *was the system of racial segregation where the natives were not allowed to share the same social services with the whites.*
- ***Kipande policy*** *in Kenya restricted the movement of the blacks in the country.*
- *The Kenyan natives were not allowed to move from one part of the country to another without identity cards.*

Reasons why the natives in Kenya were not allowed to grow cash crops.

- **The white settlers didn't want the competition in the market.**
- **The white settlers wanted to use Africans for cheap labour.**
- **The fear by the settlers that rich Africans would be difficult to manage.**

The Legislative Council (LEGCO) in Kenya.

- The Legislative Council in Kenya was established in 1907 by Governor Sir James Sadler.
- Mr. Eliud Mathu was the first African representative to be appointed on the LEGCO in 1944.
- The LEGCO was formed mainly to serve the interests of the white settlers in Kenya.

COLONIAL RULE IN UGANDA

EGYPT ATTEMPTS TO COLONISE UGANDA.

- The first country that attempted to colonise Uganda was Egypt.
- Egypt wanted to have full control over the flow of River Nile from its source.
- Khedive Ismael of Egypt appointed governors to help him establish Egyptian rule in the Equatorial province.
- Equatorial Province was an area made up of Southern part of Sudan and Northern Uganda.

Governors of the Equatorial province.

- Sir Samuel Baker.
- Charles Gordon
- Emin Pasha



Charles Gordon



Emin Pasha

Sir Samuel Baker.

- Sir Samuel Baker (in 1870) was the first governor of the Equatorial province.
- He built Fort Patiko in Northern Uganda in 1872 for protection against his enemies.
- He protected the people of Northern Uganda from the Khartoumers who were slave traders from Egypt and Sudan.

Charles Gordon

- Charles Gordon (in 1874) was appointed as the 2nd governor of the Equatorial province replacing Sir Samuel Baker.
- Gordon built fort Mruli near Masindi.
- He was more successful in creating additional trading posts in this area.
- In 1876, his views crashed with those of the Egyptian governor of Khartoum forcing him to go back to London.

Emin Pasha

- In 1878, Gordon was succeeded by the Chief Medical Officer of the Equatorial province Mehemet Emin Pasha originally known as Eduard Schnitzer.
- Pasha built Fort Wadelai in the Equatorial province.
- Pasha made his headquarters in Lado (now in South Sudan)
- He faced Mahdi revolt in Southern Sudan.
- Pasha managed to request assistance from Britain via Buganda.
- He was later rescued by Henry Morton Stanley and Emin Pasha was the last governor of the Equatorial Province.
- In 1898, the Mahdist state was overthrown by the Anglo-Egyptian force led by the British Field Marshal Lord Kitchener and the Equatorial was administered by the British.

BRITISH RULE IN UGANDA.

- Uganda was colonised by Britain.
- Uganda uses English as her official language because she was colonized by the British who speak English.
- Uganda is a member of the Commonwealth of Nations since she was colonised by the British.

- **The British established their rule in Uganda through a trading company called IBEACO. This company was represented by Captain Frederick Lugard.**

<u>Captain Frederick Lugard as a representative of IBEACO in Uganda.</u>

- **From 1888-1894 the British ruled Uganda through the Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO).**
- **Frederick Lugard arrived in Uganda in 1890 as a representative of IBEACO.**
- **He built Fort Edward at Old Kampala hill where he raised the company's flag. (IBEACO flag).**
- **He signed an agreement with Kabaka Mwanga to bring Buganda under the control of IBEACO.This agreement was also allowing missionaries to move freely in Buganda, and also stopped Buganda from signing treaties with other European countries.**
- **He signed a treaty of friendship with Omugabe Ntare of Ankole in 1891.**



Capt. Frederick Lugard

- **He restored Omukama Kasagama of Tooro onto his throne.**
- **Lugard brought the Sudanese soldiers who had been left behind by Emin Pasha in the Equatorial province to Buganda to help him in maintaining peace.**

Note:

✓ *The Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny in 1897 against Capt.Lugard.*

✓ ***A mutiny** is a rebellion staged by armed forces against their officers.*

<u>Why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny.</u>

- *They were underpaid.*
- *They were underfed.*
- *They were tired of fighting.*
- *They wanted their living conditions to be improved.*

✓ *On 31 March 1893, the IBEACO formally ended its involvement in Uganda.*

✓ *Missionaries, led by **<u>Alfred Tucker</u>**, requested the British government to take over the administration of Uganda in place of the IBEACO, arguing that British withdrawal would lead to a continuance of the religious civil war.*



Bishop Alfred Tucker

<u>Sir Gerald Portal.</u>

- **He was sent to study the political situation in Uganda.**
- **Sir Gerald Portal was sent to Uganda to write a report on the activities of IBEACO.**
- **He raised the British flag (union Jack).**
- **He built Fort Portal in Kabarole and Fort Alice in Entebbe.**
- **He recommended Uganda to be a British Protectorate.**
- **Protectorate is a country under the protection of another country.**
- **Portal established a settlement between the French and British Missionaries in Uganda.**
- **On 1 April, 1893, Portal hauled down/ lowered the flag of the Imperial British East Africa Company at <u>Mengo</u> (the Kabaka's residence) and hoisted the <u>Union Jack.</u>**
- **On 29 May 1893, he signed a treaty with <u>Mwanga II</u>, the Kabaka.**
- **Portal returned to Britain and recommended the declaration of Uganda as a protectorate. He died from <u>typhoid fever</u> in London on 25 January 1894, at the age of 36.**
- **On 18 June 1894, Uganda was declared a British Protectorate. In this case, it is therefore important to note that General Portal never declared Uganda as a British protectorate. The declaration was made by <u>Lord Rosebery</u> five months after Portal's death.**
- **The town of <u>Fort Portal</u> in Western Uganda, where Portal had his base, is named after him.**

BRITISH COLONIAL ADMINISTRATORS IN UGANDA.

- **Frederick Lugard (26 Dec 1890 – May 1892)**
- **Sir Gerald Portal (1 Apr 1893 – 30 May 1893)**
- **James Ronald Leslie MacDonald (30 May 1893 – 4 Nov 1893) (acting administrator)**



Sir Gerald Portal

British Commissioners of Uganda (1893–1910)

- **Sir Henry Edward Colville (4 Nov 1893 – 10 May 1894)**
- **Frederick Jackson (10 May 1894 – 24 Aug 1894)**
- **Ernest James Berkeley (24 Aug 1894 – Dec 1899)**
- **Sir Harry Johnston (Dec 1899 – Nov 1901)**
- **Sir James Sadler (1 January 1902 – 20 Nov 1907)**
- **Sir Henry Hesketh Bell (20 Nov 1907 – 31 Jan 1910)**
- **Sir Harry Cordeaux (1 Feb 1910 – 18 Oct 1910)**

British Governors of Uganda (1910–1962)

- **Sir Harry Cordeaux (1910–1911)**
- **Sir Frederick Jackson (1911–1918)**
- **Sir Robert Coryndon (1918–1922)**
- **Sir Geoffrey Archer (1922–1925)**
- **Sir William Gowers (1925–1932)**
- **Sir Bernard Henry Bourdillon (1932–1935)**
- **Sir Philip Mitchell (1935–1940)**
- **Sir Charles Dundas (1940–1945)**
- **Sir John Hathorn Hall (1945–1952)**
- **Sir Andrew Cohen (1952–1957)**
- **Sir Frederick Crawford (1957–1961)**
- **Sir Walter Coutts (1961–1962)**



Henry colville



Sir Harry Johnston

- **Captain Frederick Lugard.**
  - ✓ **He was the representative of IBEACO in Uganda.**
- **Colonel Henry Colville**
  - ✓ **He brought Bunyoro under British rule**
- **Sir Harry Johnston**
  - ✓ **He signed the 1900 Buganda agreement on behalf of the British protectorate government.**



Sir Hesketh Bell



Sir Robert Coryndon

- **Sir Hesketh Bell**
  - ✓ **He encouraged the growing of cash crops in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He linked the railway line from Jinja to Namasagali.**
  - ✓ **He introduced the first ford car in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He encouraged road construction in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He established steamers on Lake Victoria.**
- **Sir Frederick Jackson**
  - ✓ **He governed Uganda during the first world war**
  - ✓ **The building of Mulago hospital started during his time**
  - ✓ **He stopped Lamogi rebellion**

- **Sir Robert Coryndon**
  - ✓ **He formed the Legislative Council (LEGCO) in Uganda in 1921.**
- **Sir Geoffrey Archer**
  - ✓ **He opened up Makerere college.**
  - ✓ **He promoted education by building schools.**
- **Sir William Gowers**
  - ✓ **A department of education was set up by the government during his time/ term of office.**
- **Sir Bernald Bourdillon**
  - ✓ **He supported the establishment of more schools.**
- **Sir Philip Mitchell**
  - ✓ **He promoted higher education in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He turned Makerere college into a university.**
- **Sir Charles Dundas**
  - ✓ **He governed Uganda during the second world war**
  - ✓ **He drew the development plan for Uganda**
- **Sir John Hathorn Hall**
  - ✓ **He stopped many riots against colonial rule in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **The first three Ugandans on the LEGCO were nominated during his term of office.**
- **Sir Andrew Cohen**
  - ✓ **Owen falls dam was completed in his term of office**
  - ✓ **Radio Uganda was opened during his term of office**
  - ✓ **Nyanza Textile Industries Limited (NYTIL) was built during his term.**
  - ✓ **The construction of the parliamentary building started during his term of office.**
  - ✓ **He exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain in 1953**



Sir Philip Mitchell



Sir John Hathorn Hall



Sir Andrew Cohen



Sir Edward Muteesa II being sent into exile

<u>Reasons why Kabaka Muteesa II was exiled.</u>

- **He rejected the proposed East African federation.**
- **He demanded Buganda's independence from Uganda.**

<u>Why the British wanted to form the East African federation.</u>

- **They wanted to ease administration.**
- **To promote economic cooperation among the three territories.**

Note:

- *Kabaka Muteesa II rejected the proposed East African Federation because he feared to lose Buganda's land to the British (White settlers).*
- *In 1948,* ***Mr.Creech Jones*** *advocated for the formation of the East African High Commission.*
- *The Commission was based in Nairobi. It controlled customs, taxes, postal services, meteorology, statistics, higher education, research and currency.*
- *When trade increased between the territories, the commission became the East African Common Services Organisation. This later became the East African Community in 1967.*
- *The exiling of Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain led to the* ***Kabaka crisis of 1953*** *in Buganda.*
- ***The Kabaka crisis*** *was a time when there were many riots in Buganda against the British colonialists.*
- *In order to enable the return of the kabaka from exile,* ***The Namirembe Agreement of 1955*** *was signed.*

- ***The Namirembe Agreement*** *was signed by* ***Keith Hankock*** *on behalf of the British and* ***Micheal Kintu*** *on behalf of Buganda kingdom.*

❖ **Sir Frederick Crawford**
- ✓ **He organised the first general elections in Uganda.**
- ✓ **The construction of the parliamentary building was completed during his term of office.**
- ✓ **The government health department was set up during his term of office.**

❖ **Sir Walter Coutts**
- ✓ **He was the last British governor in Uganda**
- ✓ **He granted Uganda her independence.**



Sir Walter Coutts

<u>THE FORMATION OF THE LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL (LEGCO) IN UGANDA</u>
- **LEGCO was a law making body during colonial rule.**
- **LEGCO served as the parliament during the colonial times.**
- **LEGCO was formed in 1921 during the time when <u>Sir Robert Corydon</u> was the British governor in Uganda.**

<u>Reasons for the formation of LEGCO</u>
❖ **To make laws.**
❖ **To advise the colonial government.**
❖ **To get information from various regions of Uganda.**

Note:
- ✓ *Ugandans had no representative on the LEGCO until 1945.*
- ✓ *When* ***Sir John Hathorn Hall*** *the British governor by the time the first Ugandan natives were nominated on the LEGCO.*
- ✓ *The natives were not happy with the LEGCO in 1921 because they were not represented on the LEGCO at all.*
- ✓ *The LEGCO used to set laws as the parliament of today does.*

<u>The first three Ugandans to be nominated on the LEGCO (in 1945)</u>
- **Kawalya Kaggwa from Buganda representing the Central region**
- **Yekonia Zirabamuzaale from Busoga representing the Eastern region**
- **Petero Nyangabyaki Akiiki from Bunyoro representing the Eastern Uganda.**

Note:*-In 1946,* ***Yekosofati Innyon*** *was nominated to represent the Northern region on the LEGCO in Uganda.*

<u>Ways LEGCO helped Ugandans to demand for independence.</u>
❖ **It gave the natives courage to air out their complaints.**
❖ **Native members on LEGCO encouraged their members to form associations.**
❖ **It encouraged the natives to demand for self rule.**
❖ **It laid a strong foundation for native leadership.**

Note:
- ✓ ***John V. Wild*** *was appointed as the chairperson of the* ***Wild Constitutional Committee*** *which was formed to find means of making members on the LEGCO directly elected by people.*
- ✓ *The committee was formed by* ***Sir Fredrick Crawford*** *in 1956.*
- ✓ *The committee recommended that there should be direct elections in all parts of the country based on a voters' register.*
- ✓ *It also recommended that the LEGCO would be called the* ***National assembly.***
- ✓ *The first elections were held in 1958.*
- ✓ ***Pumla Kisosonkole*** *became the first Ugandan woman on the LEGCO in 1957.*

<u>Role played by the LEGCO towards Uganda's independence.</u>
- ✓ *It gave Ugandans a chance to discuss matters that affected them.*
- ✓ *It was a platform for the Ugandans to demand for their independence from the colonialists.*

REACTIONS TO COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

- Some people of East Africa collaborated with the colonialists eg.Apollo Kaggwa, Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta, Nabongo Mumia etc.
- Others resisted against colonial rule.eg. Kabaka Mwanga, Omukama Kabalega, Chief Awich, etc.

COLONIAL RESISTERS IN EAST AFRICA.

- Resisters were the East African natives who opposed colonial rule.

Ways the East African natives resisted against colonial rule.

- Through staging rebellions.
- Through forming boycotts.
- Through forming riots and demonstrations.
- Through forming trade unions.

Examples of colonial resisters in East Africa.

- Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro.
- Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda.
- Chief Siki of the Nyamwezi.
- Chief Mkwawa of the Hehe.
- Abushiri Bin Salim.
- Kinjikitire Ngwale of Tanzania.
- Dedan Kimathi of Kenya.
- General China of Kenya.
- Chief Meli of the Chagga.
- Chief Awich of Payera in Acholi.

East African communities that strongly resisted against colonial rule.

- Banyoro of Uganda.
- Hehe of Tanzania.
- Ngoni of Tanzania.
- Yao of Tanzania.
- Matumbi of Tanzania.
- Nandi of Kenya.
- Kikuyu of Kenya.
- Acholi of Uganda.

Causes for the resistance against colonial rule in East Africa.

- Colonial rule was harsh and oppressive to the natives.
- Loss of powers by kings and chiefs.
- Loss of fertile land by the natives.
- Acquisition of military skills from world wars.
- Denial of the natives equal representation on the LEGCO.
- Imprisonment of the native nationalists.

Reasons why East African natives resisted colonial rule.

- To oppose heavy colonial taxes.
- To protect their independence.
- They wanted to regain their lost lands
- To oppose forced labour on plantations.
- To fight against the harsh and oppressive colonial rule.

Reasons why resistance against the colonial rule in East Africa was defeated / unsuccessful.

- The natives had inferior weapons.
- Disunity among the people of Uganda.
- The natives never had strong standing armies.
- The colonialists had better fighting skills.

REBELLIONS AGAINST COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

- A rebellion is an occasion when people choose to fight those in authority.
- It is a violent act staged by many people in a country against unlawful acts by the government.
- Rebellions against colonial rule were led by the African natives who had acquired education and military skills.

Examples of rebellions staged against colonial rule in East Africa.

- Nyangire rebellion in Bunyoro
- Abushiri revolt in Tanzania.
- Hehe rebellion in Tanzania
- Maji Maji rebellion in Tanzania.
- Mau Mau rebellion in Kenya.
- The Nandi resistance in Kenya.

- Lamogi rebellion in Acholi
- Mwanga's rebellion in Buganda
- The Sudanese mutiny

(i) Maji-Maji rebellion in Tanganyika.

- The Maji-Maji rebellion was the most fierce and greatest rebellion in Tanganyika (German East Africa)
- It took place between 1905 and 1907.
- It was led by Kinjikitire Ngwale in the Rufiji valley.
- The fighters mixed flour with water got from River Rufiji and smeared their bodies for protection hence the name Maji Maji rebellion.
- They believed that this mixture would turn the bullets from Germans' guns into water.
- The Ngoni, Matumbi, Yao and other Tanganyikans participated in the Maji Maji rebellion.

Causes of the Maji-Maji rebellion.

- The harsh treatment of the natives by the German administrators (Akidas and Jumbes)
- Forced cotton growing.
- Heavy taxation of the local people.
- Some people had lost their land to German settlers.
- The need to regain independence.
- Germans' arrogance and disrespect of African cultures.
- The replacement of German rulers by Akidas and Jumbes.

Results of the Maji-Maji rebellion.

(a) Positive effects.

- African workers were paid higher wages than before.
- Medical and education services were improved.
- The natives were allowed to grow cash crops.
- The Germans changed from direct rule to indirect rule.
- The taxes paid by Africans were reduced.

(b) Negative effects

- It led to destruction of property.
- There was great famine in areas affected.
- Many people lost their lives.
- It led to displacement of many people.



Maji Maji fighters

(ii) The Mau-Mau rebellion in Kenya.

- It was staged between 1951-1956.
- Mau-Mau stands for Mzungu Arudi Ulaya Mwafrika Apate Uhuru meaning "Let Europeans go to Europe so that the Africans can get their independence"
- The Mau Mau rebellion was staged by Kikuyu against the British land policy in which Africans became squatters.
- The military leaders of the Mau-Mau movement were Dedan Kimathi and General China.
- Its political leaders were Jomo Kenyatta and James Gichuru.
- The Mau Mau fighters hid in the Aberdare ranges which had thick forests making it difficult to be traced by the British troops.



Jomo Kenyatta was the political leader of Mau Mau rebellion.

Causes of the Mau-Mau rebellion.

- Loss of fertile land by the Kenyan natives.
- Heavy taxes and high prices for goods.
- Unbalanced representation on the LEGCO.
- Denial of the Africans to grow their own cash crops.
- Forced labour on plantations.

- To demand for independence.
- Under payment of African workers.

Main aims of the Mau-Mau Rebellion.

- To liberate African land from the white settlers.
- To end racial segregation (colour bar policy) and the Kipande system.
- To force the British grant independence to Kenyans.

Reasons why the Mau Mau rebellion took long to end.

- It involved skilled fighters.
- It involved many Kenyan societies.
- The fighters hid in the mountains and thick forests making it hard to be traced.

The Reaction of the British towards the Mau Mau rebellion in Kenya.

- They declared a state of emergency in Kenya.
- They banned African political organisations.
- They restricted the movement of the people.
- Many Africans were imprisoned.



Mau Mau fighters

Effects of the Mau Mau Rebellion.

(a) **Positive effects.**

- The colour bar policy was ended.
- It speeded up the independence process of Kenya.
- Kenyans regained the freedom to grow their own cash crops.
- It developed the spirit of nationalism in Kenya.
- The rights of the Kenyans were respected.

(b) **Negative effects.**

- Many people lost their lives.
- A lot of property was destroyed.
- Many people were displaced from their homes.
- People lived in fear of death.
- Many people were forced into reserves and detention camps.
- Prisoners suffered harsh treatment and poor living conditions.

(iii) **Abushiri rebellion in Tanganyika.**

- It was the first rebellion to be staged against colonial rule in Tanganyika.
- It was started in 1888 by the people of Pangani and it spread to the coastal areas of Tanganyika.
- Its leader was an Arab called **Abushiri Bin Salim** and an African chief called Bwanaheri.
- Abushiri Bin Salim was eventually defeated by the Germans and they hanged him.
- The people of the coast were forced to accept German rule.

Causes of the Abushiri revolt.

- Loss of political power and control over slave trade .
- The collection of taxes at the coast by Germans.

Effects of the Abushiri revolt.

- Many people lost their lives.
- A lot of property was destroyed
- The tax rates were reduced.
- It led to outbreak of famine.

(iv) **The Hehe Rebellion in Tanzania.**



Chief Mkwawa

- It was staged by the Wahehe people of Tanganyika in 1891.
- It was led by chief Mkwawa.
- To avoid being captured, Mkwawa hanged himself.
- His head was cut off by the Germans and was taken to Germany for scientific research on Africans' brain to see how it functions.

Causes of the Hehe rebellion.

- Chief Mkwawa wanted to regain control over trade in his area.
- The introduction of heavy taxes by the Germans.
- The massive killing (massacre) of Mkwawa's peace delegation by the Germans.

Effects of the Hehe rebellion.

- It led to outbreak of famine.
- It led to displacement of people.
- It led to death of many people.
- A lot of money was spent by the Germans to end the rebellion.
- It led to destruction of property.

(v) **Nyangire rebellion (1907)**

- Nyangire means I have refused
- It was staged by the Banyoro and led by Omukama Kabalega
- The main cause was "The Banyoro never wanted to be ruled by the Baganda chiefs who were the agents of the British.
- These Baganda chiefs were collaborating with the British.

Note:

- ✓ *On 9th April,1899, Kabalega was captured by the British together Mwanga of Buganda.*
- ✓ *Both of them were exiled to* ***Seychelles islands.***
- ✓ *Kabalega spent 24 years in exile. He was given permission to return to Bunyoro in 1923 but died in Jinja on April 6th, 1923.*
- ✓ *Mwanga died from exile in 1903.*

(vi) **The Lamogi rebellion**

- It was staged between 1911-1912 by the people of the Acholi against the British
- It was led by chief Awich of Payera in Acholi land.
- The main cause was forced gun registration policy by the British.
- The British wanted the people of Acholi to register their guns and pay taxes for them.
- It was a tactical way of disarming the Acholi.
- The Acholi were later defeated and disarmed.

(vii) **The Sudanese Mutiny**

- A mutiny is a rebellion staged by members of an armed force against their officers.
- The Sudanese Mutiny was staged in 1897-1878 by the Sudanese soldiers against the British.
- These soldiers were stationed at Eldama Ravine in the present day Kenya complained of little pay and delayed salaries.
- They marched towards Kampala, killing and looting as they went.
- The rebellion came to end with the help of Sir Apollo Kaggwa.

Why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny.

- They were underpaid.
- They were underfed.

- They were tired of fighting.
- They wanted their living conditions to be improved.

The effects of the rebellions against colonial rule in East Africa.

- They led to death of people.
- They led to displacement of people.
- They led to destruction of property.
- Some traditional leaders were exiled.
- They brought suffering and misery to the Africans.
- They united Africans in their fight against colonial rule.
- They promoted African nationalism.
- They helped Africans to protect themselves from oppression.

THE RISE OF AFRICAN NATIONALISM AND THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Nationalism** is the feeling of love for and pride in one's country.
- ***A nationalist*** is a person who has strong feeling of love for his / her country.
- These nationalists united people in their struggle for independence.
- **Patriotism** is the feeling of love for one's country and willingness to defend it.

Factors that led to the rise of African nationalism.

- The formation of political parties.
- Harassment of the natives by colonialists.
- Acquisition of European education.
- The influence of World War II.

The second world war contributed to the demand for independence in the following ways;

- African war veterans acquired guns
- African war veterans learnt new military skills.
- The war gave Africans courage to fight for their independence.
- The war united many African nationalists.

The prominent nationalists in East Africa include:

- Julius Nyerere
- Jomo Kenyatta
- Apollo Milton Obote
- Ignatius Kangave Musaazi
- Benedicto Kiwanuka
- Tom Mboya
- James Gichuru
- Dedan Kimathi

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Independence** is the state of being free from social, political and economic oppression.
- **National independence** is the state when a country is free from control of another country.

The struggle for independence in East Africa was in two forms.
These were;
(i) Peaceful struggle.
(ii) Armed struggle.

- ***Peaceful struggle*** is when the East African natives used non-violent means to demand for independence.
- It was mainly used by the natives in Uganda.

The peaceful means of demanding for independence included;
-Formation of political parties.
-Formation of boycotts.
-Peaceful demonstrations.

- **Armed struggle** is when the East African natives used violent means/ fire arms to demand for their independence.
- It was mainly used by the natives in Kenya.

Qn:*How was the attainment of Uganda's independence different from that of Kenya?*

-Uganda got her independence through peaceful struggle while Kenya got hers through armed struggle.

Reasons why the Ugandan natives demanded for independence.

a) Economic reasons.

- **They wanted to regain their lost land.**
- **They wanted to be free from unfair colonial policies.like paying heavy taxes.**
- **They wanted to have control over their natural resources.**
- **They wanted to have fair prices for goods.**

b) Political reasons.

- **They wanted to participate in choosing their own leaders.**
- **Traditional leaders wanted to regain their lost powers.**
- **They wanted to have equal representations on the Legislative council (LEGCO).**

c) Social reasons

- **They wanted to end racial segregation by the Whites.**
- **They wanted to revive African culture.**
- **They wanted to be free from forced labour.**
- **They wanted to have access to better social services.**
- **They wanted to have their rights respected by the Whites.**

Problems the people of East Africa faced during their struggle for independence.

- **Some of them were imprisoned.**
- **Some of them were murdered.**
- **Some political parties were banned.**
- **Some had their movements restricted to particular places.**
- **Disunity among all people in Uganda.**
- **Some African natives were tortured.**
- **Some of them were sent into exile. For example -Sir Edward Muteesa II who was exiled to Britain in 1953 by Sir Andrew Cohen.**

THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- **A political party is an organisation comprising of people with the same political ideologies and goals.**
- **Political parties were formed mainly to demand independence.**
- **They united people in their struggle for independence.**

Why political parties were formed during colonial rule.

- **To unite people in their struggle for independence.**
- **To deal with common problems affecting people.**
- **To defend and fight for rights of Africans.**
- **To protest harsh government laws and policies.**
- **To advise the government.**

Examples of political parties that were formed in Uganda before independence

- **Uganda National Congress (UNC)**
- **Uganda People's Congress (UPC)**
- **Uganda Patriotic Movement (UPM)**
- **Democratic Party (DP)**
- **Kabaka Yekka (KY)**
- **United Congress Party (UCP)**

The Uganda National Congress (UNC)

- **It was the first political party to be formed in Uganda**
- **It was formed by Ignatius Kangave Musaazi and Abu-baker Kakyama Mayanja in 1952**

Objectives of UNC

- To struggle for Uganda's independence.
- To unite all Ugandans for a common goal.
- To promote democracy in Uganda.
- To promote the economy in the interests of Uganda.

Challenges faced by UNC

- It faced a strong opposition from the Lukiiko
- Internal problems by party leaders.



Ignatius Kangave Musaazi

Democratic Party (DP).

- It was formed by Joseph Kasolo in 1954.
- Joseph Kasolo was the first leader of DP and later was replaced by Matayo Mugwanya in 1956.
- Matayo Mugwanya was replaced by Benedicto Kiwanuka in 1958.
- DP was mainly for Catholics.
- In 1961, General elections were held and DP won the elections followed by UPC.
- This made Benedicto Kiwanuka who was the leader of DP by then become the first Chief Minister of Uganda.



Benedicto Kiwanuka

Reasons for the formation on DP.

- To demand for Uganda's independence.
- To protect the rights of the Catholics mainly in the government.

United Congress Party.

- It was led by David Lubega.
- It support traditional rulers and supported a federal system of government.

Uganda People's Union (UPU)

- It was formed in 1959 by the members of the LEGCO representing various districts outside Buganda.
- It was led by Wilberforce Nadiope.

Uganda People's Congress (UPC)

- It was formed on March 10th 1960 and Dr. Milton Obote was chosen to be its leader.
- UPC was formed by splinter members of UNC and UPU.
- It made an alliance with Kabaka Yekka party and won the 1962 general elections leading Uganda to independence.
- Its main objective was to lead Uganda to independence.



Dr. Apollo Milton Obote

Kabaka Yekka (KY).

- It was formed by Simeon Masembe and Augustine Kamya who were the members of Buganda Lukiiko.

Objectives of Kabaka Yekka.

- To defend the Kabaka and his Kingdom.
- To promote the interests of Buganda kingdom and the Kabaka in the politics of Uganda.

Note:

- ✓ ***KY*** *made an alliance with* ***UPC*** *which gave UPC more strength to win* ***DP*** *in the 1962 general elections.*
- ✓ ***An Alliance*** *refers to uniting of people, states or parties to achieve a common goal.*

THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN KENYA.

- **Kenya African Union (KAU)**
- **Kenya African National Union (KANU)**
- **Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU)**
- **The East African Association (EAA)**
- **Kenya African National Congress (KANC)**

The Kenya African Union (KAU).

- **It was the first political party to be formed in Kenya.**
- **It was formed in 1944 and James Gichuru was its first president.**
- **Kenyatta joined it in 1944 and he became its president in 1946.**
- **KAU was banned in 1953 and Kenyatta was imprisoned in the same year.**

The Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU)

- **It was formed in 1960 by the people of Northern Nyanza and the coast.**
- **Its leaders were Mr Ronald Ngala, Mr Masinde Muliro and Mr Moi Daniel.**

The Kenya African National Union (KANU).

- **In March 1960, most of the African leaders on the Legislative council formed the Kenya African National Union (KANU) with Mr.James Gichuru as its president and Mr. Oginga Odinga as the vice president.**
- **In 1962, Mzee Jomo Kenyatta replaced James Gichuru as its president.**
- **In the same year, KANU led Kenya to its independence under Jomo Kenyatta.**

  Note:
  - *KANU won the I961 general elections but refused to form a government until August 1961 when Jomo Kenyatta was released.*
  - ***Kenyatta*** *became the first president of KANU with* ***Oginga Odinga*** *as the Vice president and* ***Tom Mboya*** *as the secretary general.*
  - *In May 1963, the second national elections were held. KANU won the elections against KADU.*
  - *On Madaraka day,1st June 1963, Kenya got her internal self government a government which led Kenya to independence.*
  - *On 12th December 1963, Kenya became the last East African country to become independent.*
  - ***Prince Philip*** *handed over the instruments of power to Prime Minister* ***Jomo Kenyatta*** *in the Uhuru Stadium in Nairobi.*

THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN TANZANIA.

- **Tanganyika African National Union (TANU)**
- **United Tanganyika Party (UTP)**
- **Tanganyika African Association (TAA)**

Tanganyika African Association (TAA).

- **The Tanganyika African Association (TAA) was the first political party to be formed in Tanganyika.**
- **It was formed in 1929 by a group of young educated Africans to demand for self-government for Tanganyika.**
- **Its leaders were A.Bomani, B.Humanko and S.Kondoro until 1953 when Dr. Nyerere was elected as its president.**

Tanganyika African National Union (TANU).

- **When Mwalimu Kambarage Nyerere was elected President, he reorganised TAA and transformed it into an effective organ of National politics.**
- **On 7 July 1954, the name TAA was changed to Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) with Nyerere as its leader.**

- Through this party, Nyerere mobilised his fellow natives to demand for independence.

Objectives of TANU.

- To end tribalism in Tanganyika.
- To prepare for self-government.
- To abolish of racism.
- To promote cooperation between trade unions and cooperatives.
- To have more Africans in the civil service.

Roles played by political parties in the demand for independence.

- They demanded for the independence of East African countries.
- They united the natives in the struggle for independence.
- They defended and fought for the rights of Africans.
- They demanded the release of the nationalists who had been imprisoned.
- They dealt with common problems affecting Africans.
- They opposed discrimination of the natives by the colonialists.
- They served as a voice for Africans against colonialism.
- They protested the harsh colonial policies like forced labour.

Challenges faced by political parties in the struggle for independence.

- Some political parties were banned.
- Imprisonment of political leaders.
- Shortage of funds.
- Lack of support from all communities.
- Disunity among the East African natives.

Effects of the struggle for independence.

(a) **Positive effects**

- The natives got independence from the colonialists.
- The natives got representatives on the Legislative council.
- The living conditions of the natives were improved.
- It increased the spirit of nationalism among the natives.
- Many Africans nationalists were released from prisons.
- The rights of the East African natives were respected by the colonialists.
- It ended discrimination among races in East Africa.
- It promoted unity and brotherhood among East African natives.

(b) **Negative effects.**

- Many people lost their lives.
- It led to destruction of property.
- Many African nationalists were imprisoned.
- Many political parties were banned
- It led to separation of families.
- There was outbreak of famine in areas affected by rebellions.
- Many African natives suffered harsh treatment and poor living conditions.

THE ACHIEVEMENT OF INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

Country	*Colonised by*	*Independence from*	*Date of independence*	*Party that led it to independence.*	*First executive president*
Tanzania	Germany	Britain	9th Dec, 1962	TANU	Julius Nyerere
Rwanda	Germany	Belgium	1st July,1962	Parmehutu	Gregoire Kayibanda
Burundi	Germany	Belgium	1st July,1962	UPRONA	Mwami Mwambutsa
Uganda	Britain	Britain	9th Oct, 1962	UPC	Apollo M. Obote
Kenya	Britain	Britain	12th Dec, 1963	KANU	Jomo Kenyatta

Note:

- ✓ ***Parmehutu*** *stands for* ***Party of the Hutu Emancipation Movement*** *(French: Parti du Mouvement de l'Emancipation Hutu)*
- ✓ ***UPRONA*** *stands for* ***Union for National Progress*** *(French: Union pour le Progrès national).*
- ✓ *It was founded by* ***Louis Rwagasore*** *in 1960*
- ✓ *On* ***9th October,1962****, Uganda was granted independence by* ***Sir Walter Coutts*** *who was a British governor of Uganda by then.*
- ✓ *The national celebration of Uganda's independence took place at* ***Kololo Heroes' ground****.*
- ✓ *The British flag (Union jack) was lowered as the British anthem (God save the Queen) was being played, and the Uganda national flag was raised for its first time as the Uganda national anthem was being played.*
- ✓ *The Uganda national flag was raised for its first time by* ***Maj. Akorimo Kanuti.***
- ✓ *Dr.Apollo Milton Obote received the* ***instruments of power*** *from* ***Prince Edward George Nicholas the Duke of Kent*** *who had represented the Queen of England. These included the national constitution, national flag, a dummy key to state house and the national coat of arms.*
- ✓ ***Self government*** *is when the citizens of a country are in charge of the central government administration but under protection of another powerful country.*
- ✓ *Uganda gained self government in 1962.*
- ✓ ***Sir Edward Muteesa II*** *was the first non-executive president of Uganda.*
- ✓ *In 1963* ***Sir Edward Muteesa II*** *was appointed President of Uganda. He was the head of state but had no powers to govern.*
- ✓ *The leader of Uganda after independence was called* ***Executive Prime Minister****.*
- ✓ ***Obote*** *became the first executive prime minister of Uganda.*
- ✓ ***Benedicto Kiwanuka*** *was unable to become the first executive Prime minister because his party lost to an alliance of UPC and KY in the 1962 elections.*

INDEPENDENCE MOVEMENT LEADERS IN EAST AFRICA.

(famous Nationalists in East Africa)

Sir Edward Muteesa II



- **He was a son and a successor of Kabaka Daudi Chwa II.**
- **He was the first president of Uganda.**
- **He was exiled to Britain by Sir Andrew Cohen for rejecting the formation of the East African Federation by the British.**
- **He became the first president of Uganda and was overthrown by Dr.Apollo M.Obote when he attacked his palace in 1966.**

Apollo Milton Obote.



- **He was the leader of Uganda People's Congress (UPC) which led Uganda to independence.**
- **He led the alliance of Kabaka Yekka and UPC in the 1962 elections against Benedicto Kiwanuka of Democratic Party (DP).**
- **When the alliance won the elections, Obote became the first executive prime minister of Uganda in 1962.**
- **He made Uganda a Republic through the Republican constitution of 1967.**
- **He abolished cultural institutions in Uganda.**

Benedicto Kiwanuka.



- **He led DP against UPC in the 1961 elections.**
- **He became the first chief Minister of Uganda after winning the 1961 General Elections.**
- **He was one of the founding leaders of the Democratic Party (DP).**
- **He also became the first African leader of the Legislative Council in Uganda.**

Ignatius Kangave Musaazi.



- He formed the Uganda African farmers' Union in 1947 to demand equal rights and opportunities for the Uganda farmers.
- In March 1952, he formed the first national political party in Uganda called the Uganda National Congress (UNC) with Abu Mayanja.
- For this reason, Musaazi is recognised as a heroe in the history of Uganda and father of nationalistic politics.

Jomo Kenyatta (Johnston Kamau Wangengi)



- His original name was Johnston Kamau.
- He was named Kenyatta which means "Kenya's lamp".
- He led Kenya to independence under KANU.
- He was one of the political leaders of Mau Mau rebellion.
- In April 1953,Kenyatta was found guilty of leading Mau-Mau rebellion and he was sentenced to seven years' imprisonment.
- He was the president of Kenya from 1963 til his death on 22nd August 1978. He was succeeded by Daniel Arap Moi his vice president.

James Gichuru.



- He was the minister of defence in Kenya's cabinet after independ
- He was one of the founders of African National Union.
- He was once the president of the Kenya African National Union.

Tom Mboya.



- He was the founder of the Kenya Local Government Workers' Union.
- He was one of the founder members and the first Secretary general of KANU.
- He was the Minister for Economic planning in the Kenyan government after independence until his assassination in 1969.

Daniel Arap Moi.



- He was one of the founder members of the KANU.
- He was a minister in the KANU government after independence.
- In 1967 he became the vice president and in 1978 he became the president of Kenya up to 1998 when he retired.

Harry Thuku.

He was a founder of the younger Kikuyu Association which later changed to the East African Association in 1920.

He was a member of KAU and KANU until his death in 1970.

Oginga Odinga.



- He was one of the founder members and first vice president of KANU.
- He and others worked hard to get Kenyatta out of prison.
- He was the first Vice President of Kenya after independence.
- He founded the Kenya People's Union in 1967.

Dedan Kimathi.

- He was one of the military leaders of the Mau-Mau freedom fighters.
- The other military leader was General China.
- He was captured and executed by British forces on 15th Feb 1957.

Ronald Ngara.

- He was elected to the LEGCO in 1957.
- He was the first president of KADU.
- He was a cabinet minister in the government of Kenyatta until his death in 1972.

Julius Nyerere.



- He changed Tanganyika African Association into TANU.
- He founded the TANU.
- He was the first Chief Minister of Tanganyika in 1961.
- He led Tanganyika to independence under TANU.
- He retired from office in 1985 and was succeeded by Ali Hassan Mwinyi.

Achievements of Julius Nyerere for Tanzania.

- He united Tanganyika and Zanzibar to form Tanzania in 1964
- He was one of the founders of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU).
- He united the people of Tanganyika and made them into one nation.
- He improved the education in Tanzania.
- He made Kiswahili the national language of Tanzania.

EFFECTS OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

Political effects	Positive	❖ New states were created in Africa. ❖ Africans learnt new leadership skills. ❖ New systems of administration were introduced in East Africa.
	Negative	❖ Africans lost their independence to the colonialists. ❖ Africans were denied political rights. ❖ Traditional leaders lost their powers. ❖ Creation of new states led to separation of communities.
Social effects	Positive	❖ Formal education was introduced. ❖ Foreign languages were introduced in Africa. ❖ Social service centres like schools, hospitals were built.
	Negative	❖ Africans were segregated. ❖ It led to displacement of people. ❖ It led to loss of African culture.
Economic effects	Positive	❖ It led to development of towns and trading centres. ❖ Many cash crops were introduced in Africa.

		❖ It led to development of infrastructure like roads, industries. ❖ New forms of currency were introduced.
	Negative	❖ Heavy taxes were imposed on Africans. ❖ African local industries collapsed. ❖ It led to over exploitation of East Africa's natural resources.

POST INDEPENDENCE EAST AFRICA.

- Post independence East Africa involves the changes that have taken place in East African countries since independence.
- A number of changes have taken place in East African countries since independence. Some of them include:
  - Formation of republics.
  - Change of governments and leaders.
  - Formation of political parties.
  - Formation of the East African community.
  - Development of transport and communication lines.
  - Development of infrastructure like airports, railway lines, roads, banks, hotels etc.
  - Development of industries.
  - Development in technology.
  - Development in trade.

FORMATION OF REPUBLICS IN EAST AFRICA.

- A Republic is a state or a country that is governed by a president who is elected by the people.
- East African countries became republics in different years under different leaders and governments.

Country	*Year when it became a Republic*	*Leader/ executive president*
Rwanda	1962	Gregoire Kayibanda.
Kenya	1963	Jomo Kenyatta
Tanzania	1964	Julius Nyerere
Burundi	1966	Michael Micombero
Uganda	1967	Dr. Apollo M.Obote

Note:

- ✓ ***The 1967 constitution*** *made Uganda become a Republic.*
- ✓ *Obote became the president with more executive powers and William Wilberforce Nadiope as the vice president.*
- ✓ *The 1967 constitution also abolished all kingdoms (cultural institutions in Uganda). These included Buganda, Bunyoro, Ankole etc.*
- ✓ *Tanzania became a republic on 22nd April 1964 after the union of Zanzibar and Pemba with Tanganyika.*
- ✓ *The three states formed Tanzania with* ***Julius Nyerere*** *as the president and* ***Sheik Abeid Karume*** *as the first vice president and* ***Rashid Kawawa*** *as the second vice president.*

FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES.

- A political party is a organisation consisting of people with the same political ideologies and goals.
- There are many political parties which have been formed in East Africa since independence.

Current political parties in Uganda.

- National Resistance Movement (NRM)
- Forum for Democratic Change (FDC)
- Peoples Progressive Party (PPP)
- Peoples Development Party (PDP)
- Justice Forum (JEMA)
- Uganda People's Congress (UPC)

Current political parties in Kenya.

- Jubilee party
- Orange Democratic Movement (ODM).
- National Rainbow Coalition (NRC)
- People's Party of Kenya (PPK).
- Party of Independent Candidates of Kenya (PICK)
- Democratic Party (DP).
- United Democratic Movement (UDM).

Current political parties in Tanzania

- Chama Cha Mapinduzi (CCM)
- Labour Party (LP)
- United Democratic Party (UDP).
- National Convention for Construction and Reform (NCCR)

Current political parties in Rwanda.

- Rwandan Patriotic Front (RPF)
- Rwanda Socialist Party
- Christian Democratic Party.
- Islamic Democratic Party.
- Social Democratic Party.
- Party for Progress and Concord.
- Liberty Party.

Current political parties in Burundi

- National Council for the Defence of Democracy (NCDD)
- Independent Labour Party (ILP)
- Union for National Progress (UPRONA)
- Front for Democracy in Burundi (FDB)
- Liberal Party (LP).

Ruling political parties in East Africa.

Country	*Party*	*Leader*
Uganda	National Resistance Movement Organisation	H.E Yoweri Kaguta Museveni
Kenya	Jubilee party	Uhuru Kenyatta
Tanzania	Chama Cha Mapinduzi	John Pombe Magufuli
Rwanda	Rwandan Patriotic Front	Paul Kagame
Burundi	National Council for the Defense of Democracy	Evariste Ndayishimiye

Reasons for the formation of Political Parties in East Africa today.

- To advise the government
- To defend and fight for the rights of the people.
- To deal with common problems affecting people.
- To demand for improvement of welfare of the people.
- To protest the harsh government laws and policies.

LEADERS OF EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES SINCE INDEPENDENCE.

- East African countries have had various governments and leaders of government since independence.

Factors that have led to change of governments/ leaders in East African countries.

- Dictatorship among leaders.
- Lack of respect for human rights
- Bad governance
- Death of leaders in power.
- Political persecution
- Military coups.

Presidents of Uganda since independence.

- Sir Edward Muteesa II (9th Oct, 1962 – 2nd March, 1966)
- Dr.Apollo Milton Obote I (2nd March, 1966 – 25th Jan, 1971)
- Idi Amin Dada (25th Jan, 1971 – 11th April, 1979)
- Prof. Yusuf Kironde Lule (11th April, 1979 – 20th June, 1979)
- Godfrey Lukongwa Binaisa (20th June, 1979 – 12th May, 1980)
- Paulo Muwanga (12th May, 1980 – 15th Dec, 1980)
- Dr. Apollo Milton Obote II (17th Dec, 1980-27th July, 1985)

- **Gen.Tito Okello Lutwa (27th July, 1985 – 26th Jan, 1986)**
- **H.E Yoweri Kaguta Museveni (26th Jan, 1986 up to date)**

 *Sir Edward Muteesa II*	❖ Sir Edward Muteesa II was born on 19 November 1924 and died on 21 November 1969. ❖ He was the Kabaka of the Kingdom of Buganda in Uganda from 22nd November 1939 until his death in 1969. ❖ He was the thirty-fifth Kabaka of Buganda. ❖ The foreign press often referred to him as King Freddie, a name rarely used in Uganda. ❖ He was the first president of Uganda. ❖ He had no executive powers.(the executive powers were under the prime minister) ❖ His vice president was Sir Wilberforce Nadiope. ❖ In 1953, he was exiled to Britain by Sir Andrew Cohen for rejecting the proposed East African federation. ❖ In 1966, he was exiled to Britain by Apollo M.Obote who attacked his palace. This attack was led by Idi Amin Dada.
 *Dr Apollo Milton Obote.*	❖ He was born in Akokoro village in Apac district in Northern Uganda. ❖ Apollo Milton Obote was born on 28th December 1925 and died on 10 October 2005. ❖ he was a Ugandan political leader who led Uganda to independence in 1962 from British colonial administration. ❖ He was the first Prime Minister of Uganda from 1962 to 1966 and President of Uganda from 1966 to 1971, then again from 1980 to 1985. He was overthrown by Idi Amin in 1971, but regained power in 1980 a year after Amin's 1979 overthrow. ❖ He became the first executive president of Uganda. ❖ He attacked the Kabaka's palace in 1966 and exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to the Britain. This caused the Kabaka crisis of 1966. ❖ He abolished all kingdoms in Uganda. ❖ He declared Uganda a republic in 1967. Note:-***A republic*** *is a country headed by a democratically elected president.* ❖ He died in exile in Zambia in 2005.
 *Idi Amin Dada*	➢ **From 25TH Jan, 1971-11th April, 1979 (8yrs,76 days)** ❖ He was born in 1925 and died on 16th August 2003. ❖ He was born to a Kakwa father and a Lugbara mother. ❖ He was a Ugandan military officer who served as the President of Uganda from 1971 to 1979 ❖ He overthrew Obote through a coup. ❖ Obote had travelled to Singapore to attend a commonwealth conference. Forms of human rights abuse during Amin's regime. ❖ He banned all political parties in Uganda. ❖ He imprisoned those who opposed him. ❖ He killed those who opposed him.eg.Ben Kiwanuka. ❖ Other political opponents were kidnapped never to be seen again.

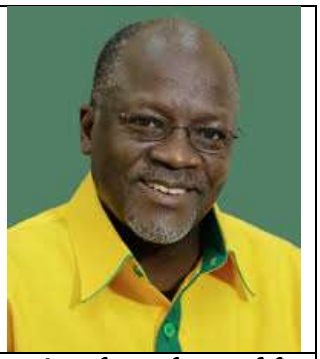
	❖ He expelled all Asians and the British in 1972 and declared an economic war. ❖ He ruled using decrees (unquestionable laws).There was no parliament during his regime. **Note:** *Amin was overthrown in 1979 when the Ugandans in exile under the Uganda National Liberation Front (UNLF) and the Tanzanian People's Defence Forces attacked Uganda.*
 *H.E Yoweri K, Museveni*	❖ He was born on 15th September 1944. ❖ He started a guerilla war against Obote II's government in 1981. ❖ He took over power from Tito Okello on 26th January, 1986. ❖ He restored kingdoms in 1993.

Presidents of Kenya since independence.

- Jomo Kenyatta 1963-1978.
- Daniel Arap Moi 1978-1998.
- Mwai Kibaki 1998-2013.
- Uhuru Kenyatta 2013 to date.



H.E Uhuru Kenyatta



H.E John Pombe Magufuli

Presidents of Tanzania since independence.

- Julius Nyerere Kambarage 1961-1985
- Ali Hassan Mwinyi 1985-1995
- Benjamin Mkapa 1995-2005
- Jakaya Kikwete. 2005-2015
- John Pombe Magufuli.2015 up to date.

Presidents of Rwanda since independence.

- Gregoire Kayibanda 1962-1973
- Juvenal Habyarimana 1973-1994
- Pasteur Bizimungu 1994-2000
- Paul Kagame 2000 up to date.



H.E.Paul Kagame



H.E Evariste Ndayishimiye

Presidents of Burundi since independence.

- Mwami Mwambutsa 1962-1966
- Ntare V 1966-1966
- Michael Micombero 1966-1976
- Jean-Baptiste Bagaza 1976-1987
- Pierre Buyoya 1987-1993
- Melchior ndadaye July 1993-Oct 1993.
- Cyprien Ntaryamira Feb 1994-April 1994.
- Sylvestre Ntibantunganya 1994-1996
- Pierre Buyoya 1996-2003
- Domitien Ndayizeye 2003-2005
- Pierre Nkurunziza 2005-2020.
- Evariste Ndayishimiye 2020 up to date.



H.E. Salva Kiii of South Sudan

CHALLENGES FACING POST INDEPENDENCE EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES

Social challenges	*Economic challenges*	*Political challenges*
▪ High levels of illiteracy. ▪ Violation of human rights. ▪ High levels of poverty ▪ Ignorance among the people. ▪ Diseases. ▪ High infant and maternal mortality rate ▪ Teenage pregnancies and early marriages. ▪ Famine. ▪ Poor social service delivery. ▪ Low life expectancy.	▪ Poor transport and communication ▪ Low level of technology. ▪ Wide spread poverty. ▪ High dependency ratio. ▪ High levels of unemployment. ▪ Corruption ▪ Brain drain ▪ Over dependence on foreign aid.	▪ Civil wars and coups ▪ Violation of human rights ▪ High number of refugees. ▪ Dictatorship among leaders. ▪ Political greed among the leaders. ▪ Political instability

Possible solutions to the problems affecting Economic developments in East Africa.

Challenge(s)	*Cause(s)*	*Possible solution(s)*
❖ Famine	▪ Prolonged drought ▪ Civil wars. ▪ Poor farming methods. ▪ Outbreak of crop pests and diseases	▪ By mechanising agriculture. ▪ By encouraging farmers to use modern farming methods. By promoting peace and security in all East African countries. ▪ By encouraging farmers to grow more food crops.
❖ Corruption	▪ Low payments ▪ Delayed payments ▪ Greed for wealth.	▪ By enforcing laws against corruption. ▪ By paying attractive salaries to the workers. ▪ By paying workers in time.
❖ Diseases. ❖ High infant and maternal mortality rate ❖ Low life expectancy.	▪ Poor feeding ▪ Poor medical services in an area	▪ By improving health services in all East African countries.
❖ Civil wars and coups ❖ High number of refugees	▪ Bad governance ▪ Greed for power	▪ By promoting good governance in all East African countries. ▪ By holding peace talks to solve conflicts.
❖ Poor transport and communication	▪ Shortage of funds.	▪ By modernising infrastructure like roads, industries.
❖ High levels of illiteracy ❖ Ignorance among the people.	▪ Social injustice against the girls. ▪ Absence of schools in an area.	▪ By introducing universal education in all East African countries. ▪ By introducing adult literacy programs. ▪ By educating parents on the value of taking children to school
❖ Violation of human rights	▪ Dictatorial rule. ▪ Ignorance about human rights.	▪ By enforcing laws against human rights in East African countries. ▪ By sensitizing people about their rights.
❖ Wide spread poverty. ❖ High levels of unemployment.	▪ Low levels of education. ▪ Diseases ▪ Corrupt government officials	▪ The governments should provide small scale loans to people to start up various projects. ▪ Encouraging people to start up small scale industries.

❖ High dependency ratio. ❖ High population growth.	▪ High birth rate ▪ High migration rate. ▪ Polygamous marriage.	▪ By encouraging the use of family planning methods. ▪ By limiting the number of children in a family by law. ▪ By encouraging girl-child education.
❖ Poor social service delivery	▪ Shortage of funds ▪ Shortage of skilled labour ▪ Corruption. ▪ Poor transport network	▪ By training more skilled labour. ▪ By constructing better roads in the country. ▪ By enforcing laws against corruption.

DEMOCRATIC RULE IN EAST AFRICA

- The word democracy comes from a Greek word "Demos" which means people.
- Democracy is a system of government that is of the people, by the people and for the people.

Meaning:

- Of the people: The government comprises of regular citizens.
- By the people: The government is elected by its citizens
- For the people: The government is mainly formed to benefit the people.

- Democracy is the system of government in which people power is exercised by all people in the country.
- A democratic government is a system of government in which power is exercised by all citizens.
- Democracy started from the city of Athens in Greece.

Principles of Democracy

- Human rights
- Rule of law
- Political stability
- Government transparency
- Democratic participation

Indicators of democracy in East Africa

- Regular free and fair elections
- Respect for human rights
- Constitutional rule
- Equality of all citizens
- Accessibility to all positions of leadership by all citizens

Advantages of democracy

- ❖ It promotes national unity.
- ❖ It promotes peaceful change of leadership.
- ❖ It promotes equality of all citizens.
- ❖ It promotes the spirit of patriotism and nationalism.
- ❖ It promotes respect for human rights.
- ❖ It controls bad leadership.

Disadvantages of democracy

- ❖ Decision making takes a long time.
- ❖ It is very expensive to exercise.
- ❖ It promotes dictatorship by the majority over the minority.

BASIC RIGHTS OF CITIZENS.

CITIZENSHIP.

- Citizenship is the legal right of belonging to a particular country.
- A citizen is a person who has the legal right of belonging to a particular country.

How one acquires citizenship of Uganda.

- Through birth (is the legal right of belonging to a country when one's parents are citizens in that particular country)
- Through descent (is the legal right of belonging to a country a person gets when his / her ancestors were citizens in that country)
- Through registration. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a foreigner who has applied for citizenship in a particular country)
- Through naturalisation (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a person after having spent a very long time in a particular country)
- Through adoption. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to foreigner who was brought up by a person who is a citizen in a particular country)

Factors that determine one's citizenship.

- Area of birth
- Marriage to a citizen
- Citizenship of parents
- Nationality law

Types of citizenship

- Single citizenship. This is the legal right of belonging to one particular country.
- Dual citizenship. This is the legal right of belonging to more than one country.

Loss of citizenship of Uganda.

- By spying against your country. (Espionage against Uganda).
- By joining the army of an enemy country to fight Uganda.
- If one's citizenship was acquired unlawfully/ by fraud.
- By denouncing the citizenship.

Responsibilities/duties/obligations of a citizen

- To pay taxes promptly
- To defend the country
- To help in maintaining law and order
- To participate in community work
- To respect the rights and freedoms of other people
- To obey national laws
- To be loyal to the rulers or head of state
- To register the birth of his or her children

HUMAN BASIC NEEDS

- Basic needs are things which man cannot live without.

Examples of human basic needs

- Food
- Clothes
- Shelter
- Medical care
- Security

Problems faced when getting human basic needs

- Poverty
- Unemployment
- Laziness
- Sickness
- Poor supply of social services
- Corruption
- Bad weather changes
- Increasing population

CHILDREN'S RIGHTS

- **Children rights are basic natural freedoms to which all children are entitled**
- **In Uganda, A child is a person below 18 years of age**

Examples of children's rights

- **A right to medical care**
- **A right to play.**
- **A right to protection.**
- **A right to have a name**
- **A right to food**
- **A right to education**

Importance of children's rights

- **They protect children from harm**
- **They promote respect for children**
- **They promote the welfare of children in the society**

Note: ***The Vice chairperson*** *is the local council I committee member who is in charge of protection of children's rights.*

CHILD ABUSE

- **Child abuse is the violation of children's rights**

Forms of child abuse

- **Physical child abuse.**
- **Emotional child abuse.**
- **Psychological child abuse.**

Examples of child abuse practices.

- **Defilement**
- **Child labour**
- **Child neglect**
- **Forced early marriage**
- **Child battering**
- **Kidnapping**

Causes of child abuse

- **Poverty**
- **Parental neglect**
- **Death of parents**
- **Divorce or separation of parents**
- **Indiscipline of children**

Effects of child abuse

- **It leads to death of children.**
- **It causes body deformity.**
- **It leads to early pregnancies.**
- **It can lead to disease infections**

Ways of controlling children abuse

- **By sensitising children about their rights.**
- **By encouraging children to move in groups.**
- **By reporting cases of child abuse to elders.**
- **By educating the public on children's rights**
- **By encouraging children to behave well.**

FUNDAMENTAL HUMAN RIGHTS.

- **Human rights are basic natural freedoms to which all people are entitled.**

Examples of fundamental human rights

- **The right to life**
- **Freedom from discrimination.**
- **Freedom from slavery.**
- **Freedom from unfair detainment.**
- **The right to trial.**
- **Freedom from torture.**
- **We are all equal before the law.**
- **Freedom to move.**
- **The right to seek a safe place to live in.**
- **Every grown up has the right to do a job.**
- **Every grown up has the right to marry.**
- **Right to a nationality.**
- **The right to own property.**
- **Freedom of thought.**
- **Freedom of expression.**
- **The right to democracy.**
- **Right to social security.**
- **The right to education.**
- **The right to food and shelter.**
- **The right to play.**

Human rights violation

- This is the denial of the basic human freedoms people are entitled to.

Forms of human rights abuse

- Torturing of political opponents.
- Raping of women.
- Killing of political opponents.
- Slavery.
- Mob justice.
- Denial of the freedom of movement.
- Imprisonment without trial
- Death penalty.

Causes of mob justice in the society today.

- Poverty
- Ignorance about of the law.
- Idleness
- Delayed justice
- Untrustworthy judicial system

Dangers of mob justice

- It causes injuries to the body.
- It leads to death of the suspect.
- It can lead to destruction of property
- It leads to body deformity.

How mob justice can be controlled in the society.

- By teaching people about the laws.
- By sensitising people about the dangers of mob justice
- By ensuring transparency in the judicial system
- By creating employment opportunities especially to the youths

How the government can protect people against the human rights violation.

- By teaching people about their rights.
- By enforcing laws against human rights abuse.
- By promoting peace and security in the country.
- By forming organisations that ensure the protection of human rights.

Note: ***The Uganda Human Rights Commission (UHRC)*** *was set up in Uganda to ensure protection of human rights*

Roles that can be played by the citizens in preventing the human rights violation.

- By respecting other people's rights.
- By reporting the cases of human rights abuse.
- By helping the police in arresting people who violate human rights.
- By sensitising other people about their rights.

THE ELECTORAL PROCESS IN EAST AFRICA.

- The electoral process is the method by which a person is chosen to hold a public office
- An election is a formal democratic process of choosing leaders by voting for them.

Types of elections.

- General elections.
- Primary elections.
- By-elections
- Referendum elections.
- Local elections.

i) **General election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at the national level eg. The president, members of parliament.

ii) **Referendum election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose to accept or reject a political proposal that concerns all citizens in the country.

iii) **Local election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at local council level ie. Local council I -V leaders.

iv) **By-election.**

- **This is a formal democratic process of choosing a leader to fill a vacant political post.**

v) **Primary election.**

- **This is a formal democratic process in which a political party chooses a candidate to contest for a specific office in the general elections.**

Causes of by-elections.

- **Death of the incumbent/ post holder.**
- **Resignation of the incumbent.**
- **Long term imprisonment of the incumbent.**
- **Cancellation of the election results by the court of law.**
- **Mental illness of the incumbent.**
- **When vote of no confidence has been made against the incumbent.**

Note: *By-elections lead to loss of government funds when organising them.*

Key activities in the electoral process

- **Voter registration.**
- **Voter education (civic education concerning elections)**
- **Party primary campaigns.**
- **Training of the electoral officials.**
- **Vote casting by registered voters.**
- **Vote counting.**

Organisation of National elections.

- ***The Independent Electoral commission* is the body responsible for organizing and conducting regular free and fair elections in the country.**
- **It is under the *Ministry of Justice and Constitutional affairs.***
- **Justice Simon Byabakama is the current chairperson of the Uganda electoral commission.**
- **The chairperson Electoral commission is appointed by the president and approved by the parliament.**
- **General elections in Uganda are conducted after every five years.**

Roles of the Electoral commission

- **To register voters and candidates.**
- **To prepare election materials**
- **To count votes and release election results.**
- **To carry out civic education concerning elections/ to carry out voter education.**
- **To demarcate polling stations and constituencies.**
- **To train the electoral officials**

Challenges faced by the Electoral commission in Uganda.

- **Shortage of funds.**
- **Poor response from the voters.**
- **Dishonest electoral officials.**
- **Voter bribery due to increased poverty among the electorate.**
- **Delay of election materials**
- **Election malpractices.**

Possible solutions to the challenges facing the Electoral commission.

- **By carrying out effective voter education. This can help to reduce the number of invalid votes.**
- **By eradicating poverty among the electorate.**
- **By distributing election materials in time.**
- **By punishing dishonest electoral officials.**
- **By providing adequate funds to the electoral commission.**

Importance of elections

- They promote democracy in the country
- They promote peaceful change/ transition of leadership.
- They enable people get rid of bad leaders
- They enable people to choose their own leaders.
- They promote respect for human rights.

Election malpractices.

- These are illegal acts done during elections.
- The election malpractices are the various forms of vote rigging.
- Some of these practices may lead to cancellation of election results and hence leading to by-elections.

These practices include;

- Voter bribery.
- Multiple voting.
- Torturing of opponents.
- Campaigning on the Election Day.

Bad practices that happen during voting.

- Bribing voters during elections.
- Harassing voters of a particular candidate.
- Ballot stuffing (putting pre-ticked ballot papers in the ballot box before elections)
- Grabbing and stealing ballot papers.
- Campaigning on the voting day.
- Cheating when counting votes.

Bad practices that happen after elections.

- Making fun of the losers of an election.
- Mis-recording of election results.
- A candidate refusing to accept defeat.
- Attacking a voter who has not voted a particular candidate.
- Unnecessary delay to announce final results.

THE ELECTORAL SYSTEMS.

- Secret ballot system
- Open election system

(i) **Secret ballot system**

- This is a system where a voter is given a ballot paper and secretly selects a person he/she wants.
- This is a modern way of voting in the whole world.

Advantages of secret ballot system

- It promotes friendship among people.
- Elections can easily be monitored by computers.
- A voter is free from interference.

Disadvantages of secret ballot system

- It is very expensive to conduct.
- Votes can easily be rigged.
- It is difficult to the illiterates and the blind.
- Election results take long to be declared.

(ii) Open elections

- These are elections held when everyone is seeing each step.
- It is done by lining up behind the candidate or by putting up the hands.
- This is the cheapest way of voting in many places.
- This was common in the past.

Advantages of open elections

- They are very cheap to conduct.
- Results can not easily be rigged.
- It is simple for the illiterates.
- It discourages bribery during elections.
- Releasing of election results takes a short time.

Disadvantages of open elections

- It promotes hatred among people.
- It limits people's freedoms.
- Some people are easily influenced by others during voting.

Materials used during the process of elections.

- Nomination forms. These are forms filled by the candidates and submitted to the Electoral Commission in order to be nominated for the posts they want.
- Ballot paper. This is a sheet bearing names and photograph of a candidate standing to be elected on particular post.
- A ballot box. This is a box where ballot papers are kept after voting.
- Voter's register.This is a list of all the people who register to participate in voting.
- Ink. It is used to mark a voter who has finished to vote.
- Basins.They are used to provide a safe place to for voters to cast his/her vote.
- Biometric machine.This is a machine which proves the details of a voter.
- Declaration forms.These are forms where election results are recorded.

Terms used in elections

- A Polling station is a place where voting takes place.
- A Polling day is the day when voting takes place.
- A Polling officer is a person who is in charge of elections at a polling station. He issues out ballot papers, declares results and fills the declaration form.
- A Polling assistant is a person who assists a polling officer at a polling station. they check for voters' names, issue out ballot papers, mark voters who have finished voting.
- A Polling constable is a person who is in charge of security at the polling station
- An Electorate refers to people in a country who qualify to vote.
- Proxy is a person who is given authority to vote on behalf of someone who is absent.
- Election monitors is a group of people from a foreign country who come to watch over elections.
- Voting by proxy is when a person who is absent gives authority to another person to vote on his/her behalf.
- The candidates' agent is a person who represents a candidate at a polling station.
- An eligible voter is a person who qualifies to vote. He/she must appear on the voters' register of that polling station.
- Returning officer is a person in charge of elections in the district or division.

- **An electoral college is a group of electors who are selected to elect a candidate to a particular office.**
- **A candidate is a person who stands to be voted/contests in an election.**
- **A valid vote is a vote that has been ticked correctly.**
- **An invalid vote is a vote that has been ticked wrongly. It is counted on none of the candidates.**
- **A constituency is an electoral area represented by a member of parliament.**

Note: ***The Citizen's Coalition for Electoral Democracy in Uganda (CCEDU)*** *is the body responsible for monitoring the general elections in Uganda.*



Testing Exercise.

1. **Name the organisation which sponsored the journeys of most European explorers to East Africa.**
2. **State any two reasons for the coming of the European explorers to East Africa.**
3. **Why did most explorers who came to Uganda begin their journeys from Bagamoyo?**
4. **Name the physical feature that attracted most European explorers to Uganda.**
5. **Why did the early explorers to East Africa first go to Zanzibar before travelling to the interior?**
6. **Why was it difficult for the early explorers to Uganda to enter through Kenya?**
7. **Name any one explorer who made two journeys to East Africa.**
8. **Mention any two features in East Africa which were discovered by Henry M. Stanley.**
9. **Why did H.M Stanley circumnavigate Lake Victoria?**
10. **Name the first European explorer to come to East Africa.**
11. **Match the explorers in list A with the information given in list B correctly.**

List A	*List B*
(viii) John Speke	Crossed the Nandi and Masai land successfully.
(ix) Sir Samuel Baker	Circumnavigated lake Victoria.
(x) Joseph Thomson	Saw and named the Ripon falls.
(xi) Henry M. Stanley	Stopped slave trade in Acholi land.

12. **How was Prince Henry the Navigator helpful to the Portuguese explorers who came to East Africa?**
13. **Why were the Portuguese interested in finding the sea route to India?**
14. **Give one reason why the natives along the East African coast refuse to welcome Vasco da Gama.**
15. **Give any two reasons why the Portuguese settled along the East African coast.**
16. **State any two reasons why the Portuguese succeeded in conquering the East African coast.**
17. **Give any two reasons for the decline of the Portuguese rule in East Africa.**
18. **Why did the Portuguese build Fort Jesus at Mombasa?**
19. **Mention any two things which show that the Arabs once lived along the East African coast.**
20. **Give one way Fort Jesus contributes to the economic development of Kenya.**
21. **State any two effects of the coming of the European explorers to East Africa.**
22. **How did exploration work lead to colonisation of East Africa?**
23. **State any three problems that were faced by the early explorers to East Africa.**
24. **How is a Protectorate different from a Colony?**
25. **Give any two reasons for the coming of the European colonialists to East Africa.**
26. **Give the meaning of each of the following;**
    (i) **Scramble for Africa.**
    (ii) **Partition of Africa.**
27. **What role did Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck play towards colonisation of Africa?**
28. **Name any one East African country which was not partitioned in the Anglo-German agreement of 1886.**

29. Which Anglo-German agreement finalized the partition of East Africa?
30. Which European country colonised Rwanda and Burundi?
31. Mention any three methods the colonialists used to acquire colonies in East Africa.
32. State any two problems the colonialists faced during the establishment of their rule in East Africa.
33. Name the first colonial rule to be signed in Uganda.
34. Mention any two terms of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
35. What role did Sir Harry Johnston play during the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement?
36. Name any two regents of kabaka Daudi Chwa.
37. Why was kabaka Daudi Chwa unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?
38. How did the 1900 Buganda agreement affect the kabaka?
39. Mention the two forms of taxes that were introduces as a result of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
40. State any three effects of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
41. Why was kabaka Mwanga unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?
42. Apart from the 1900 Buganda agreement, mention any two other agreements that were signed to put Uganda under colonial rule.
43. Give any two reasons why some natives in East Africa collaborated with the colonialists.
44. Name any two colonial collaborators in Uganda.
45. Give any two ways Semei Kakungulu promoted development in Eastern Uganda.
46. How was captain Frederick Lugard helpful to omukama Kasagama of Tooro?
47. How did Nuwa Mbaguta improve the transport network in Western Uganda?
48. State any two roles that were played by the collaborators towards the colonisation of East Africa.
49. Write the following in full.
    (i) IBEACO
    (ii) GEACO
50. Give one reason why IBEACO ran bankrupt.
51. How did Bishop Alfred Tucker support the work of the IBEACO in East Africa?
52. Give any two reasons why IBEACO was formed.
53. Mention the two systems of administration that were used by the European colonialists in East Africa.
54. Give one reason why the Germans chose to use direct rule in Tanganyika.
55. Give one way direct rule affected the African natives.
56. Which system of administration was used by the British colonialists in Uganda?
57. Give any two ways the British colonialists benefited from using the above system.
58. State any two reasons why the German colonialists were hated in Tanganyika.
59. What is a Mandate territory?
60. Name the international organisation that was formed to maintain world peace after world war I.
61. Why did German lose her colonies in Africa after world war I?
62. How was German punished by the League of Nations after world war I?
63. Which European country controlled the following countries after world war I?
    (i) Rwanda.
    (ii) Burundi
    (iii) Tanganyika
64. Name the British official who encouraged the settlement of the whites in the Kenya highlands.
65. Give any two ways the settlement of the whites in the Kenya highlands affected the natives.
66. How did colour bar policy affect the natives of Kenya?

67. Who was the first governor of the Equatorial province?
68. Why was Capt. Frederick Lugard related to the IBEACO?
69. Name the British prime minister who declared Uganda a British protectorate.
70. Give any two ways Sir Hesketh Bell contributed to the development of Uganda.
71. Name the British governor who formed the LEGCO in Uganda.
72. How did Sir Philip Mitchell promote higher education in Uganda?
73. What was the major cause of the Kabaka crisis of 1953?
74. Why was Sir Edward Muteesa II exiled to Britain in 1953?
75. Name the British governor of Uganda who exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain.
76. Give any two reason why the LEGCO was formed in Uganda.
77. Name the first three Ugandan natives to be nominated on the LEGCO in Uganda.
78. Mention any three causes of the Maji Maji rebellion.
79. Apart from the Maji Maji, mention any three other rebellions that were staged in East Africa during colonial rule.
80. How was Jomo Kenyatta related to the Mau Mau rebellion?
81. Give any two ways Mau Mau rebellion affected the natives of Kenya.
82. Why is Seychelles islands historically remembered in Buganda and Bunyoro?
83. Name any four colonial resisters in East Africa.
84. State any two reasons why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny against the colonialists in Uganda.
85. Give any two reasons why Africans' resistance against colonial rule was easily defeated.
86. How was the attainment of Uganda's independence different from that of Kenya?
87. Give any three reasons why the natives in East Africa demanded for their independence.
88. Complete the table below.
89. Name the political parties that led the following East African countries to independence.
    (i) Uganda.
    (ii) Kenya
    (iii) Tanzania
90. State the main reason for the formation of political parties in East Africa during colonial rule.
91. Give any four ways colonial rule affected the people of East Africa.
92. Give the meaning of the term Democracy.
93. Mention any two indicators of Democracy in East African countries.
94. State any three advantages of Democracy.
95. Give any three ways one can acquire citizenship of Uganda.
96. State any three responsibilities of a good citizen.
97. State any three causes of a by-election in a country.
98. Give any three ways the electoral commission organises national elections in Uganda.
99. Mention any three examples of election malpractices.
100. Give any two ways elections are important to a country.

TOPIC 5: RESPONSIBLE LIVING IN THE EAST AFRICAN ENVIRONMENT

INTRODUCTION TO ENVIRONMENT.

- Environment refers to all things that surround man

Components of the environment

- Animals
- Plants
- Water bodies
- Buildings
- Land/ soil
- Roads
- Vehicles
- Birds
- Insects

Types of the environment

- Biological environment.
- Physical environment.

Biological environment

- This is the type of environment which consists of living things

Components of the biological environment

- Plants
- Animals

Physical environment

- This is the type of environment which consists of non-living things

Examples of physical environment that can be seen.

- Mountains.
- Land/ soil.
- Cars
- Hills
- Valleys
- Buildings

Examples of physical environment that cannot be seen

- Air
- Vapour
- Temperature
- Electricity

ENVIRONMENTAL PRACTICES

- These are activities which people do on the environment
- Some of these activities are friendly to the natural environment (positive) while others are dangerous to the natural environment (negative).

(a) **Negative environmental practices**

- These are human activities which destroy the environment
- These activities lead to environmental degradation

Note: ***Environmental degradation*** *is the misuse of the environment lowering its quality and productivity.*

Examples of negative environmental practices (activities that degrade the environment)

- Deforestation (the massive cutting down of trees without replacement)
- Un controlled bush burning.
- Overgrazing. The grazing of many animals on the same piece of land for a long period of time
- Overcultivation. The use of land without giving it time to rest
- Site clearing
- Construction of roads
- Making of bricks

Note: *Most of these negative environmental practices lead to soil erosion*

*Qn:**How do they lead to soil erosion?***
They leave the land bare exposing it to the agents of soil erosion

Causes of environmental degradation

- **Over population**
- **Wide spread of poverty**
- **Unemployment**
- **Insecurity/ political instability**
- **Industrialisation**

Natural causes of environmental degradation

- **Floods**
- **Storms**
- **Drought**
- **Earthquake**
- **Volcanic eruptions**
- **Lightning**

Land degradation.

- **This is the misuse of soil lowering its quality and productivity.**

Ways people misuse/ degrade land.

- **Through deforestation.**
- **By carrying out overgrazing.**
- **Through over cultivation.**
- **Through swamp drainage.**
- **By dumping non-biodegradable materials on land.**
- **Through uncontrolled mining.**
- **Through bush burning.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Land fragmentation*** *is the division of land into plots.*
- ✓ ***Soil leaching*** *is sinking of soil nutrients to deeper layers of the soil where plant roots can not reach.*
- ✓ ***Land consolidation*** *is the process of putting together small pieces of land to form a big piece.*

Effects of soil degradation

- **It leads to shortage of land for crop growing.**
- **It leads to spread of deserts through fragmentation.**
- **It causes floods.**

Soil erosion.

- **This is the removal of top soil by the agents of erosion.**

Agents of soil erosion

- **Flowing water**
- **Moving animals**
- **Wind**

Causes of soil erosion

- **Bush burning**
- **Over cultivation**
- **Deforestation**
- **Over grazing**
- **Monocropping**

Wetland degradation.

- **This is the misuse of wetlands lowering their quality and productivity.**

Ways how wetlands are degraded.

- **Through wetland drainage (this is the removal of water from wetlands)**
- **Wetland pollution (dumping of industrial wastes, garbage and sewage in swamps)**
- **Burning of wetlands**
- **Over harvesting of wetland resources**

How to conserve wetlands.

- **By enforcing laws against wetland degradation.**
- **By teaching people about the importance wetlands.**

Uses of wetlands

- **They control floods.**
- **They are habitats for aquatic animals.**
- **They help in the formation of rain.**
- **They are fishing grounds.**
- **They provide raw materials for craft work.**
- **They help to clean water (they have sponge-like roots which filter water)**

Qn: How wetlands help to form rain.

- *They reduce the speed of flowing water making more water to evaporate and form rain.*

Dangers of environmental degradation

- **It leads to soil erosion**
- **It leads to soil infertility**
- **It leads to floods**
- **It leads to prolonged drought**
- **It leads to global warming**
- **It leads to diseases.**
- **It leads to displacement of wild animals.**
- **It leads to landslides**

(b) Positive environmental practices

- **These are human activities which help to conserve the environment**
- **Environmental conservation/ protection is the act of protecting the environment from lowering its quality and productivity**

General methods of environmental conservation

- **Sustainable use of the environment**
- **Waste management**
- **Protection of the environment by NEMA**

SUSTAINABLE USE OF THE ENVIRONMENT

This is the use of natural products and energy in the way that cannot harm the environment.

Examples of sustainable use of the environment.

- **Afforestation**
- **Re-afforestation**
- **Controlled wetland harvesting.**
- **Alternative energy use.**
- **Proper farming methods.**

○ **Afforestation.**

- **This is the planting of tree where they have never existed.**
- **Re-afforestation is the planting of tree where they have ever existed**

Importance of trees in the environment.

- **They help in rain formation**
- **They control soil erosion by reducing the speed of rain drops that fall on the ground**
- **They are habitats for animals.**
- **They earn income through attracting tourists.**
- **They provide herbal medicine.**

- ❖ They act as wind breaks.
- ❖ They provide food.
- ❖ They purify air by absorbing carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen.

○ <u>Controlled wetland harvesting.</u>

- This prevents the extinction of wetlands.

○ <u>Proper farming methods</u>

- These are methods of farming which help to maintain soil fertility and prevent environmental degradation.

<u>Examples of proper farming methods</u>

- Crop rotation
- Contour ploughing
- Terracing
- Mulching
- Strip cropping
- Rotational grazing
- Inter cropping
- Agro-forestry
- Bush fallowing

<u>Examples of poor farming methods</u>

- Overgrazing.
- Over cultivation.
- Crop rotation.
- Monocropping
- Bush burning

(i) Crop rotation.

- This is the growing of different crops in different seasons on the same piece of land.

<u>Advantages of crop rotation</u>

- ❖ It maintains soil fertility.
- ❖ It breaks the life cycle of pests.

(ii) Terracing.

- Terracing controls soil erosion by reducing the speed of running water.
- Soil erosion is the removal of top soil by the agents of soil erosion.

<u>Agents of soil erosion</u>

- Flowing water
- Moving animals
- Wind

(iii) Mulching

- Mulching is the covering of top soil with dry plant materials.

<u>Examples of mulches</u>

- Dry leaves
- Dry grass
- Banana fibres

<u>Advantages of mulching</u>

- ❖ It maintains soil fertility.
- ❖ It controls soil erosion.
- ❖ It keeps the soil moist.
- ❖ It controls the growth of weeds.

<u>Disadvantages of mulching</u>

- ❖ Mulches are breeding places for pests e.g termites
- ❖ Mulched gardens can easily catch up fire.

(iv) Agroforestry is the growing of crops together with useful trees in the same garden.

Advantages of agroforestry

- Trees provide shade to crops.
- Trees act as wind breaks
- Leaves which fall from trees form humus

(v) Alternative energy use

- This is where people use other sources of energy apart from fuel wood.

Examples of other sources of energy

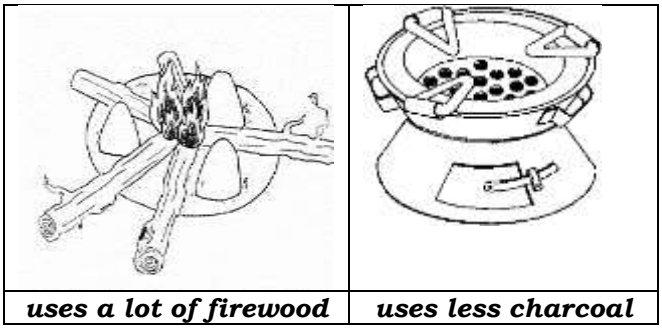
- Solar energy from the sun
- Bio gas from garbage and animal wastes
- Hydro electricity from fast flowing water
- Geo thermal from hot springs

Importance of using other sources of energy in the environment.

- It reduces air pollution through charcoal burning.
- It reduces the rate of deforestation for fuel wood.
- It helps in proper use of the garbage in the environment.

Examples of fuel wood

- Charcoal
- Fire wood



uses a lot of firewood | *uses less charcoal*

Examples of minerals that are used as sources of energy

- Coal
- Crude oil
- Uranium

Conservation of wood fuel

- By using energy saving cooking stoves.
- By turning saw dust into charcoal after mixing it with coffee husks
- By using energy saving cooking methods like covering what is being cooked
- Through rural electrification.



an energy saving grate.

Dangers of using wood fuel

- It leads to deforestation.
- It leads to air pollution through charcoal burning.
- It leads to soil erosion through cutting down trees.
- It leads to reduction in rain formation.

WASTES MANAGEMENT.

- A waste is a material that is a by-product of human activity that has no further value.
  Or: Wastes are things that have no value to humans.

Types of wastes

- Biodegradable wastes
- Non-biodegradable wastes

- Biodegradable wastes are wastes which can decay/ rot.

Examples of biodegradable wastes

- Animal remains.
- Plant remains eg baskets, paper bags, palm leaves bags.

- Non-biodegradable wastes are wastes which do not decay/ rot.

Examples of Non-biodegradable wastes.

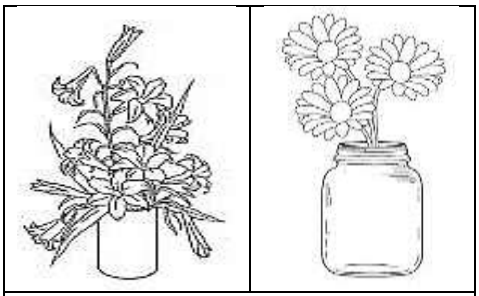
- Plastics
- Metals/ scrap
- Polythene bags
- Rubber products

The 5Rs in proper management of wastes

- Reuse
- Recycle
- Reduce
- Reject/ refuse
- Return

○ Reuse: This means using wastes for other purposes eg.

- Using a polythene bag more than once
- Using containers to hold flowers
- Using containers as dust bins



Flowers in old tins

○ Recycle: This involves making new products from the materials that had been thrown away.

Examples of materials that can be recycled

- Plastics
- Metals/ scrap
- Glass

○ Refuse/ reject: Here,one rejects to use non-biodegradable materials.

○ Return: This involves returning wastes to shops and manufacturers where they were bought.

○ Reduction: This involves minimising the generation of wastes in the environment.

Causes for the increase of wastes in the environment.

- Lack of proper waste disposal places
- Use of resources wastefully.
- Ignorance about the methods of recycling.

CONSERVATION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

- **Environment conservation** is the protection of the natural environment from lowering its quality and productivity.
- It involves careful use and management of resources in the environment.

(a) **Conservation of soil**

- By mulching
- By terracing
- By contour ploughing
- By crop rotation
- By rotational grazing

Note:

- ✓ *Soil is conserved by controlling soil erosion.*
- ✓ ***Devegetation** is the removal of the plant cover leaving the soil bare.*
- ✓ *It leaves the land bare exposing it to agents of soil erosion.*

Human activities that lead to devegetation.

- ✓ *Bush burning*
- ✓ *Deforestation*
- ✓ *Overgrazing*

Conservation of wetlands

- **Through controlled harvesting of wetland products**
- **Avoid dumping garbage in wetlands**
- **By enforcing laws against swamp reclamation.**

Conservation of air.

- **Air is conserved by controlling air pollution.**
- **Air pollution is the introduction of harmful substances into air/ atmosphere.**

How to control air pollution

- **By planting more trees**
- **By treating waste gases from industries before being released to the atmosphere**
- **Proper maintenance to reduce exhaust fumes.**

Conservation of forests

- **Through afforestation and reafforestation.**
- **Through controlled harvesting of trees**
- **Through re-afforestation**
- **By establishing forest reserves**
- **By encouraging the use of energy saving cooking stoves**
- **Through rural electrification ie. it controls the rate of deforestation by reducing demand for wood fuel.**

Note: ***Rural electrification*** *is the extension of electricity in rural areas.*

Conservation of water.

- **By protecting trees in the environment.**
- **By harvesting rain water and using it wisely.**
- **By closing taps after fetching water.**
- **By reporting leaking water pipes to leaders.**
- **By removing wastes settling in trenches.**

Bodies that promote conservation of the natural environment in Uganda.

- ✓ **National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)**
- ✓ **National Forestry Authority (NFA)**
  This conserves forests in Uganda.
- ✓ **Uganda Wildlife Authority (UWA)**
  This is in charge of conservation of wildlife in Uganda.

National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)

- **It was started in 1995**
- **It is in charge of conserving the environment/ wetlands in Uganda.**
- **NEMA is under the *Ministry of Water and Environment.***

How NEMA conserves the environment/ roles of NEMA.

- ❖ **It teaches people about the importance of forests and swamps.**
- ❖ **It creates forest reserves.**
- ❖ **It enforces laws against wetland degradation.**
- ❖ **It evicts people settling in wetlands.**

Challenges faced by NEMA.

- ❖ **Shortage of funds.**
- ❖ **Ignorance among the people about the importance of wetlands.**
- ❖ **Rapid population growth. This creates need for more land for settlement.**

Importance of conserving vegetation.

- ❖ **It reduces soil erosion.**
- ❖ **It conserves the natural beauty of the environment.**
- ❖ **It promotes constant supply of wood fuel.**
- ❖ **It conserves the natural habitat for animals.**
- ❖ **It promotes tourism.**
- ❖ **It promotes constant supply of craft raw materials.**
- ❖ **It controls drought.**

CONSEQUENCES OF IRRESPONSIBLE LIVING IN THE ENVIRONMENT.

- **Floods**
- **Drought**
- **Soil erosion**
- **Land slides**
- **Pollution of the environment**
- **Diseases**
- **Resource depletion**
- **Over production of children**

(a) Floods

- **This is a large amount of water covering an area that is usually dry.**
- **It is caused by too much rainfall.**
- **Floods occur in low lands/ valleys.**

Effects of floods

- ❖ **They lead to destruction of property.**
- ❖ **They lead to loss of animal and human life.**
- ❖ **They lead to displacement of people.**

Solutions to floods

- ❖ **By planting trees along river banks**
- ❖ **By constructing reservoirs to hold excess water**
- ❖ **By maintaining vegetation cover in catchment areas**

(b) Landslides

- **This is a large mass of soil that falls down the slopes of a mountain.**
- **Landslides mainly occur in highland areas where trees have been cut down on a large scale.**

Causes of landslides

- ❖ **Too much rainfall.**
- ❖ **Deforestation.**

Effects of landslides.

- ❖ **They lead to destruction of property.**
- ❖ **They lead to loss of animal and human life.**
- ❖ **They lead to displacement of people.**

Note:

- ✓ *Landslides can be controlled in highland areas by planting more trees.*
- ✓ *The government resettled the people who were affected by landslides in Bududa to Western Uganda which had a safer plateau.*

(c) Desertification/ prolonged drought.

- **This is the condition by which an area receives very little rainfall and has very few plants growing on it.**
- **A Desert is an area that receives very little rainfall and has very few plants growing on it.**
- **Desertification comes as a result of uncontrolled removal of vegetation and swamp drainage.**

Causes of drought

- **Deforestation**
- **Swamp drainage**
- **Bush burning.**

Effects of drought

- **It leads to shortage of food/ famine.**
- **It dries up pasture for animals.**
- **It leads to withering of crops/ crop failure**
- **It leads to soil infertility.**

How to control drought.

- **By planting more trees.**
- **By protecting vegetation and water sources.**

Note:- *Food production can be increased in desert areas by carrying out irrigation farming, growing drought-resistant crops and by growing fast maturing crops.*

(d) Pollution.

- **This is the introduction of harmful substances in the environment**

Types of pollution

- **Air pollution**
- **Water pollution**
- **Land pollution**
- **Sound/ noise pollution**

(i) Air pollution.

- **This is the introduction of harmful substances into the atmosphere.**

Things which pollute air (how air is polluted)

- **Fumes from factories and cars.**
- **Tobacco smoke from smokers.**
- **Smoke from volcanic mountains.**
- **Smoke from burning bushes and charcoal.**
- **Radioactive substances from bombs.**

Solutions to air pollution

- **Avoid bush burning.**
- **By maintaining vegetation cover.**
- **By fixing exhaust gas purifiers.**

(ii) Water pollution.

- **This is the contamination of water sources with harmful substances.**

How water is polluted.

- **By dumping wastes into water bodies.**
- **By urinating and defecating into water bodies.**
- **By discharging untreated sewage into water bodies.**

How to control water pollution

- **By planting trees along river banks.**
- **By treating industrial wastes and sewage before releasing them into water bodies.**
- **By cleaning wells regularly.**

- Avoid pouring wastes into water bodies.

(iii) Land pollution.

- This is the process of lowering the quality of land by adding wastes.
- It is the introduction of harmful substances on land.

How land is polluted.

- By dumping garbage on land
- By dumping rocks from mines on land
- By dumping used tins, polythene bags and plastics on land
- Excessive use of artificial fertilizers.
- Dumping of old vehicles and factory machines on land.

Solutions to pollution of land.

- By recycling plastics and metals.
- By using compost manure instead of artificial fertilizers.

(iv) Sound pollution.

- This is the condition when there is too much noise in the environment.

Causes of noise pollution

- Noise from war weapons.
- Noise from birds eg weaver birds.
- Noise from many people gathered in a sports stadium.
- Noise from engines of vehicles.

Effects of noise pollution

- It causes stress.
- It leads to diseases.
- It can lead to mental disorders.
- It causes permanent damage to the hearing system.

Diseases related to pollution

Type of pollution	*Disease(s)*
Water pollution	-cholera -dysentery -diarrhea -typhoid fever
Air pollution	-asthma -lung cancer -flu
Sound pollution	-headache -mental disorders

(e) Silting.

- This is the deposition of soil into water bodies by erosion.
- Silt is the soil carried by flowing water.

Effects of silting.

- It leads to creation of shallow water bodies
- It causes floods.

Solutions to silting.

- By controlling soil erosion
- Avoid cultivation along river banks

CLIMATE CHANGE.

- Climate change is the variation/ fluctuation of the weather patterns of an area.
- It is the change in the average weather condition over a long time.
- Global warming is the major cause of climate change.

Global warming

- This is the constant rise of world temperatures.

- ***Or:*** **This is the continuous heating of the earth due to emission of greenhouse gases to the atmosphere.**

Examples of greenhouse gases.

- **Carbon dioxide**
- **Carbon monoxide**
- **Nitrous oxide**

Causes of global warming.

- **Deforestation**
- **Bush burning**
- **Industrialisation**
- **Ozone layer depletion**

Note

- ✓ *Global warming occurs when the ozone layer is destroyed by excessive sun heat (rays).*
- ✓ *Ozone layer is a layer of gases that protect the earth from strong sun rays.*
- ✓ *When trees are cut and bushes burnt, it reduces on the vegetation that would have absorbed carbon dioxide which destroys the ozone layer.*

Effects / indicators of global warming

- ❖ **Acidic rainfall**
- ❖ **Melting of snow on high mountains.**
- ❖ **Excessive heat during day.**
- ❖ **Incidents of severe and prolonged drought.**
- ❖ **Reduction in the volume of water in water bodies.**

Ways of reducing global warming.

- ❖ **By planting more trees.**
- ❖ **By using renewable sources of energy. eg hydro electricity and solar energy.**
- ❖ **By treating industrial fumes before emissions.**
- ❖ **Banning importation of old vehicles.**
- ❖ **By enforcing laws that protect the environment.**

Factors that cause change in climate.

- **Prevailing winds.**
- **Ocean currents**
- **Drainage/ Nearness to water bodies.**
- **Latitude (distance from the equator)**
- **Altitude**
- **Human activities.**
- **Vegetation**

Indicators of climate change.

- ❖ **Prolonged drought.**
- ❖ **Occurrence of storms.**
- ❖ **Reduction of crop productivity.**
- ❖ **Occurrence of floods.**

WEATHER DISASTERS.

- ***A disaster*** **is an unplanned occurrence which causes great harm or damage.**

Examples of weather related disasters

- **Floods**
- **Landslides**
- **Drought**
- **Storms**
- **Lightning**
- **Hailstorms.**

Examples of manmade disasters.

- Nuclear explosions.
- Plane crushes
- Food poisoning
- Terrorist attacks
- Motor accidents



Testing Exercise.

1. Mention any three components of the natural environment.
2. What is Environmental degradation?
3. Mention any three ways man degrades the environment.
4. How does burning of bushes lead to soil erosion?
5. Give any two ways people degrade land.
6. State the major cause of land fragmentation in Kigezi sub-region.
7. Mention any three causes of soil erosion.
8. State any three dangers of environmental degradation.
9. How is Afforestation different from Reafforestation?
10. State any two dangers that may result from wetland degradation.
11. Give any two ways trees support the life of wild animals.
12. Give any one way tees are important in people's homes.
13. Mention any three proper methods of farming the government recommends its citizens to use.
14. Give any two reasons why farmers are always encouraged to practise agro-forestry.
15. Mention any two minerals which are a source of energy.
16. Name the type of energy which is obtained from each of the following.
    (i) Fast flowing water.
    (ii) Hot springs
    (iii) Garbage and animal wastes.
17. Mention any two examples of wood fuel.
18. Give any two ways wood fuel can be conserved.
19. Give one step the government has taken to reduce minimise the use of wood fuel in rural areas.
20. Write down the 5Rs used in proper management of wastes.
21. Mention any two examples of non-biodegradable wastes in the environment.
22. Give one way one can reuse wastes in the environment.
23. How is a recycling community useful to people in your community.
24. Mention any four consequences of irresponsible living in the environment.
25. Give one way floods affect the natural environment.
26. What causes landslides in highland areas?
27. How best can people living in highland areas control landslides?
28. Give the meaning of the term Pollution.
29. Give any two ways people pollute water bodies in the environment.
30. Mention any two diseases that result from contamination of water bodies.
31. Mention any three factors influencing the climate of East Africa.
32. Give the meaning of the term Global warming.
33. Mention any three examples of weather-related disasters.
34. State any two causes of global warming.
35. Mention any two indicators of climate change in some parts of East Africa.

EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 6

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers



For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Kakuru Dismus**

Ndagire Joan

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa.**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Six has been developed basing on the revised Primary Six Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organized, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Six in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the pupils.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts.

TEL: +256 771 623617 and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN EAST AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TERM ONE

Topic 1: East African Community (EAC)

Historical background of EAC

- Location of the East African Community member states using lines of latitude and lines of longitude……6
- Using the Prime meridian to tell the international time……9
- Formation of the East African Community……9
- Revival of the EAC……12
- Organs of the EAC……15
- Symbols of the EAC……17
- National symbols of the EAC member states……18

The People of East Africa

- Origin of human beings……25
- Sources of history……25

- Archaeological sites in East Africa.....28
- Stone age.....29
- Ethnic groups in East Africa.....31
- Migrations and settlement patterns in East Africa.....37
- Political organisation of different ethnic groups in East Africa.....42
- Social organisation of ethnic groups in East Africa.....48
- Economic organisation among different ethnic groups in East Africa.....52

Early visitors to East Africa

- The Arab traders 55
- Long distance trade and slave trade.....56
- European traders 61
- Christian missionaries in East Africa 61

Population in East Africa

- Population growth.....65
- Population census 66
- Population distribution 67
- Population density 70

TERM TWO.

Topic 2: Major resources of East Africa

- Types of resources 73
- Land as a resource 73
- Vegetation as a resource 74
- Animals as a resource 82
- Tourism industry in East Africa 86
- Climate as a resource 87
- Crop growing in East Africa.....91
- Livestock farming in East Africa 98
- Mountains as a resource 101
- Mineral resources in East Africa 104
- Lakes in East Africa 107
- Major rivers in East Africa 112
- Fishing in East Africa 115

Topic 3. Transport and Communication in East Africa.

- Road transport in East Africa.....121
- Water transport in East Africa 124
- Air transport in East Africa 125
- Pipeline transport 127
- Railway transport in East Africa 127
- Means of communication 130
- Radio communication 132
- Newspapers 133

- Television communication.....134
- Telephone communication 135
- Post office 136

TERM THREE.

Topic 4. The Road to Independence in East Africa.

- European explorers in East Africa 140
- The Portuguese explorers in East Africa 144
- Scramble for and partition of Africa 147
- Establishment of colonial rule in East Africa 148
- Colonial administrative systems in East Africa 152
- German rule in Tanganyika 153
- British rule in Kenya 155
- Colonial rule in Uganda 157
- Reactions to colonial rule in East Africa 162
- Rebellions against colonial rule in East Africa 162
- The struggle for independence in East Africa.....166
- The formation of political parties in East Africa 167
- Independence movement leaders in East Africa 171
- Effects of colonial rule in East Africa 173
- Post independence East Africa 174
- Leaders of East African countries since independence 175
- Challenges facing East African countries 178
- Democratic rule in East Africa 179

Topic 5. Responsible living in the East African environment.

- Introduction to the environment 189
- Environmental practices 189
- Sustainable use of the environment 191
- Waste management 193
- Environmental conservation 194
- Consequences of irresponsible living in the environment 196
- Climate change 198

TOPIC 4: THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA

EUROPEAN EXPLORATION IN EAST AFRICA

- **An explorer is a person who goes to a place of interest to find out more about it.**
- **Most Explorers who came to East Africa came from Europe.**
- **Explorers were the first group of Europeans to come to East Africa.**
- **The first explorers to reach the coast of East Africa were the Portuguese. They were led by Vasco da Gama.**
- **Most European explorers who came to East Africa wanted to find the source of River Nile**
- **Most European explorers who came to East Africa were sponsored by the Royal Geographical Society (RGS). It gave them food and medical supplies.**
- **Most Explorers who came to the interior of East Africa (Uganda) used the route through Bagamoyo in Tanzania.**

Why most European explorers who came to Uganda entered through Bagamoyo.

- **There was a direct route from Bagamoyo to Uganda.**
- **The route through Bagamoyo had friendly people.**

Qn: *Why was it difficult for explorers who travelled to Uganda to pass through Kenya?*

Why most European explorers who came to Uganda first went to Zanzibar.

- **To learn Kiswahili language.**
- **To get permission from the sultan of Zanzibar.**
- **To get porters to carry their supplies.**

Reasons for the coming of Explorers to East Africa.

- **They wanted to find the source of River Nile.**
- **They wanted to study the geography of East Africa.**
- **They wanted to pave way for the coming of the colonialists.**
- **They wanted to open up away for the missionaries.**

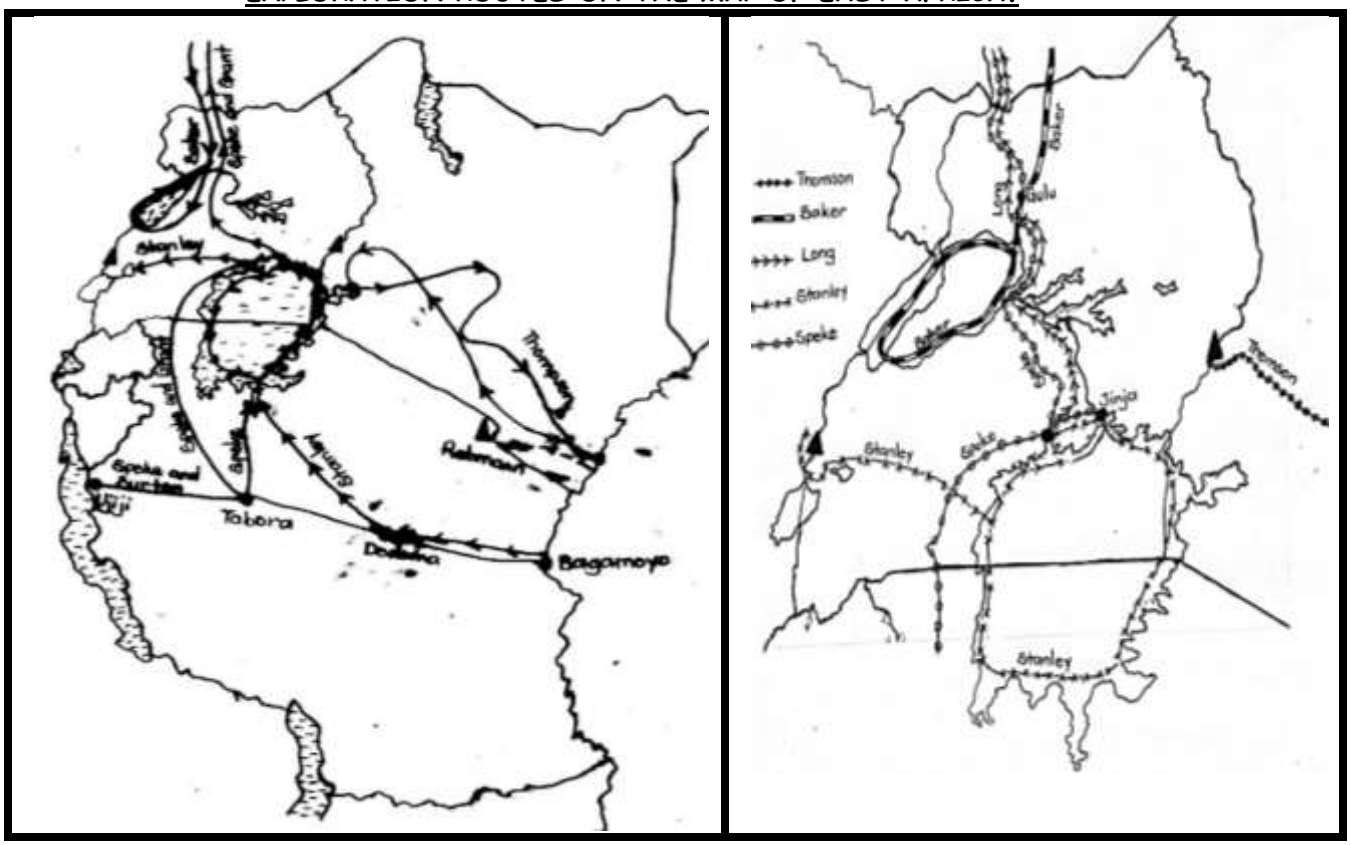
Problems that were faced by the European explorers in East Africa.

- **Walking long and tiresome journeys.**
- **Attacks from dangerous animals.**
- **Shortage of supplies like food, medicine.**
- **Attacks from tropical diseases.**
- **Attacks from hostile people.**
- **Difficulty in communication with the natives.**

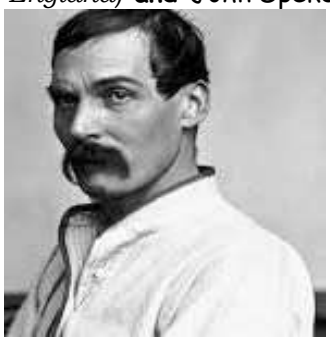
Famous European explorers in East Africa.

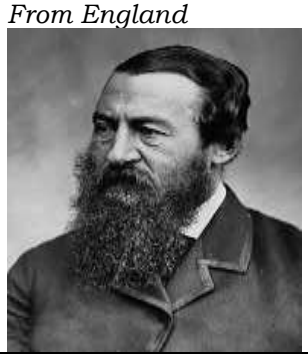
- **Vasco da Gama.**
- **John Speke.**
- **Richard Burton**
- **Chaille Long**
- **James Grant.**
- **Henry Morton Stanley.**
- **Sir Samuel Baker.**
- **Joseph Thomson.**
- **Jakob Erhardt**
- **Johannes Rebmann**
- **Johann Ludwig krapf**
- **Count teleki**
- **Dr.David Livingstone.**

EXPLORATION ROUTES ON THE MAP OF EAST AFRICA.



Major discoveries made by famous European explorers in East Africa

John Hanning Speke *From England.* *With Burton in 1857* *With Grant in 1860* 	• **Lake Victoria** • **The source of River Nile.** • **Ripon falls** **Note** - *John Speke was the first European explorer to come to Uganda (in 1862).* - *He named the **Ripon falls** at the source of river Nile after Lord Ripon who was the president of the RGS by then.* - *He also named **lake Victoria** after Queen Victoria of England.*
Richard Burton *(from England)* **and** John Speke 	• **Lake Tanganyika** ❖ **They were sent by the Royal Geographical Society to find the source of river Nile** ❖ **They were the first European explorers to travel to the interior of East Africa.** ❖ **They entered into East Africa through Bagamoyo, via Tabora to Ujiji on Lake Tanganyika.** ❖ **On their return, Burton fell sick and remained at Tabora. Speke continued northwards and came across a great water body which he believed to be the source of River Nile.**

James grant and John Speke. 	❖ **The two were sent to find the source of river Nile.** ❖ **While at Karagwe,Grant fell sick and remained at Karagwe under the care of king Rumanika who welcomed them to his kingdom.** ❖ **Speke moved northwards and entered into Buganda.** ❖ **He was welcomed by Kabaka Muteesa I in 1862.** ❖ **Speke gave gifts of clothes, rifles, knives and beads to the king.** ❖ **Speke moved eastwards and reached the source of River Nile on 28th July, 1862.** ❖ **Speke was later joined by Grant ant the two followed river Nile moving towards its mouth in the North.** ❖ **They met another explorer called Sir Samuel Baker at Gondokoro in Sudan.**
Sir Samuel Baker. *From England* 	• **Murchison falls** • **Lake Albert** ***Note:*** ✓ *John Speke and James Grant met Sir Samuel Baker at Gondokoro in South Sudan.* ✓ *Baker with his wife Jane Baker wanted to find the source of River Nile from its mouth in Egypt.* ✓ *He saw and named lake albert in 1864.* ✓ ***Lake Albert** was named after the husband of Queen Victoria of England.* ✓ *He saw and named the **Murchison falls** after the president of RGS.*
Henry Morton Stanley *A Welsh from Wales* 	• **Mountain Rwenzori.** • **Lake George.** • **Lake Edward.** ***Note:*** ❖ **Stanley came to Africa in three different occasions.** **<u>Stanley's 1st journey in 1871.</u>** ❖ **He came to look for Dr. David Livingstone.** ❖ **He was sponsored by two newspapers namely;-** - **Daily telegraph.** - **New York Herald tribune.** **<u>Stanley's 2nd journey in 1874.</u>** **He was sent to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **He used his canoe he had named Lady Alice to circumnavigate Lake Victoria.** **Henry Morton Stanley circumnavigated lake Victoria to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **In 1875, Henry Morton Stanley reached Kabaka Muteesa I's palace and requested him to allow missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **On Kabaka's request, Henry Morton Stanley wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting Christian missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **The letter was taken by <u>Linant de Bellefonds.</u> And it appeared in the Daily Telegraph newspaper.** **Note:**

	✓ ***Linant de Bellefonds*** *arrived in the Kabaka's palace in April 1875. This is where he also met Henry Morton Stanley.* ✓ *He collaborated with Stanley's idea of inviting the missionaries.* ✓ *Bellefonds was killed in Sudan on 26th August 1875 and the letter was sent to* ***Charles Gordon****, the governor of the Equatorial province, who sent it to the Queen of England.* **Henry Morton Stanley then moved westwards and saw Mountain Rwenzori and named it "the mountains of the moon" This was because of the snow on its peak which glitters like a moon.** ❖ **He also saw and named lake Edward and lake George.** ❖ **He then continued westwards through Democratic Republic of Congo and returned to Europe.** **<u>Stanley's 3rd journey (1887-1890).</u>** ❖ **He came to rescue Emin Pasha from the Equatorial province.**
Joseph Thomson *From Scotland* 	• **Mountain Elgon** • **Lake Nakuru.** • **Lake Baringo.** • **Thomson's falls (Nyahururu falls)** **Note:** ✓ *Thomson was sent to find the shortest route from the coast to lake Victoria.* ✓ *Thomson was the first European to cross the Nandi and Masai land successfully.*
Johann Ludwig Krapf *From Germany*	• **Mountain Kenya** • **River Tana**
Johannes Rebmann *From Germany in 1846*	• **Mountain Kilimanjaro**
Jakob Erhardt	• **He attempted to draw the first map of East Africa.**
Dr. David Livingstone *From Scotland.*	• **River Zambezi** • **Victoria falls along river Zambezi.** • **Lake Mweru along the border of Zambia and DRC.** • **Lake Bangweulu in Zambia** • **Lake Nyasa (Malawi)** • **River Lualaba** **Note:** ✓ *Livingstone was a doctor, an explorer and a missionary.* ✓ *He was the greatest explorer in Africa because he spent a lot of his life time exploring the African continent from 1841 till his death in 1873.*
Charles Chaille Long **(***from America***)**	❖ **He was the first European to see lake Kyoga.** • **He arrived in Buganda in 1874 and became the second European explorer to see Lake Victoria.**
Count Teleki	❖ **Lake Rudolf (lake Turkana).** ❖ **Lake Stephanie in Ethiopia.**

<u>Notable facts about explorers in East Africa.</u>

✓ ***<u>Vasco da Gama</u>*** *was the first European explorer to come to East Africa.*

- ✓ *John Speke and Richard Burton were the first European explorers to travel to the interior of East Africa.*
- ✓ *The Portuguese were the first explorers to come to East Africa.*

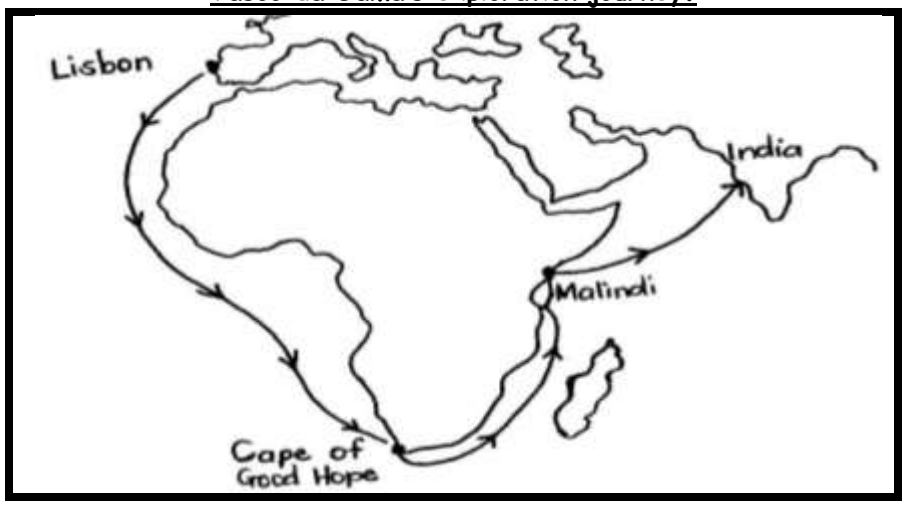
THE PORTUGUESE EXPLORERS.

- **The Portuguese were the first explorers to come to East Africa.**
- **The Portuguese explorers wanted to find the shortest sea route to India.**
- **<u>Prince Henry the navigator</u> sponsored the journeys of most Portuguese explorers to Africa.**
- **He also started a school for navigation at Sagres which trained navigators.**
- **The Portuguese wanted to find the shortest sea route to India because they wanted to get silk and spices from the far East.**

Portuguese explorers who came to East Africa.

Vasco da Gama 	• **He was sent to continue from where Bartholomew Diaz had reached.** • **He sailed from Lisbon, Portugal in 1497 and reached Calcutta, India on 20th May 1498.** • **Da Gama became the first Portuguese sailor to find a sea route to India.** • **He named the Cape of Good Hope because he had got hope of reaching India.** **Note:** • ***The Arabs along the East African coast didn't welcome Vasco da Gama because:*** ❖ *They hated Christianity which the Europeans were spreading.* ❖ *They thought that the Europeans would interfere with their trade.* ***Sultan Seyyid Ali of Malindi*** *welcomed Vasco da Gama.* *He gave him an Indian captain called* ***Ahmed bin Majid*** *to direct his ships to India.* ❖ **Da Gama was the first European to sail around the coast of Africa and find the sea route to India.** ❖ **After Vasco Da Gama had returned to Portugal from his first trip to India, the Portuguese decided to capture the Arab settlements at the East African coast.**

<u>Vasco da Gama's exploration journey.</u>



<u>Effects of the da Gama's sea route to India.</u>

- ❖ **It created more trade opportunities for Portugal.**
- ❖ **It enabled the Portuguese to set up a trading empire in the east.**
- ❖ **The Portuguese conquered the East African Coast.**

PORTUGUESE CONQUEST OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST.

- The Portuguese conquest of the east African coast began in 1500 when Pedro Alvares Cabral unsuccessfully tried to capture Sofala.
- In 1502 Vasco da Gama attacked and captured the headquarters of the Zenj empire.
- This marked the beginning of the Portuguese conquest of the East African coast.
- The Portuguese established their headquarters in Mozambique and Mombasa was their major coastal town.
- They divided their empire into provinces for easy administration, and each province was under the rule of a Governor.
- The Portuguese introduced Christianity which caused a lot of hatred from the coastal people who were already under Arab influence.
- The Portuguese administrators were very harsh, corrupt, over taxed traders and always isolated themselves from the natives.
- They controlled the East African coast for 200 years and their rule declined.

Why the Portuguese conquered the East African coast.

(Why the Portuguese came and settled along the East African coast)

- They wanted to spread Christianity along the East African coast.
- They wanted to control the profitable trade along the coast of East Africa.
- They wanted to create a resting base for their sailors.
- They wanted to fight Muslims domination in East Africa.
- The East African coast had good natural harbours for trade and defense.
- They wanted to control the coastal states and make them pay tributes to Portugal.

Why the Portuguese succeeded in conquering the East African coast.

- The Portuguese had superior weapons.
- They had well trained soldiers.
- They used surprise night attacks.
- Disunity among the coastal towns.

Reasons for the decline of the Portuguese rule in East Africa.

- Corrupt Portuguese officials.
- Poor communication with the home government.
- Constant attacks from the Arabs.
- The Portuguese administrators along the coast were very few.
- The coming of the British and the French also weakened their rule.

Effects of Portuguese rule along the coast.

a) Positive effects.

- They built Fort Jesus which is now a major tourist attraction.
- They spread Christianity along the coast.
- They introduced new crops e.g. Pawpaws, pineapples.
- They introduced new methods of farming.
- They added new words to Kiswahili language.
- East Africa was linked to Europe and India.

Note:

- ✓ *Fort Jesus was built for protection against enemies.*
- ✓ *Fort Jesus still stands today as an important historical monument which attracts tourists.*

b) Negative effects.

- It led to decline of coastal trade.
- They imposed heavy taxes on traders which decreased trade.
- It led to destruction of coastal towns e.g. Kilwa and Mombasa which were burnt.
- The coastal states lost their independence to the Portuguese.

Effects of the coming of European explorers to East Africa.

- ❖ Africa was made known to the rest of the world.
- ❖ They renamed physical features e.g. Lake Victoria instead of Nalubaale.
- ❖ They paved way for the coming of the missionaries and the colonialists.

How exploration work led to European colonisation of Africa.

- ❖ Explorers made reports about the rich natural resources of East Africa which attracted the colonialists.

EUROPEAN COLONIALISTS IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Colonialism** is the practice by which a powerful / superior country controls a weaker / inferior country.
- **A colonialist** is a person who controls an inferior country on behalf of his home country.
- **A colony** is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.
- **A protectorate** is a country which is controlled and protected by a powerful country for economic gains with no aim of having permanent settlement.

Reasons for the coming of the colonialists to East Africa.

- ❖ They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
- ❖ They wanted to invest their surplus capital.
- ❖ They wanted to find market for their processed goods.
- ❖ The desire for political pride.
- ❖ To get more space for resettling the excess population.

European countries which sent colonialists to East Africa

- Britain
- Germany
- Belgium.

Examples of famous colonialists in East Africa

- Dr.Carl Peters.
- Capt. Frederick Lugard
- Sir Gerald Portal
- Sir William Mackinnon
- Sir Harry Johnson
- Sir Samuel Baker
- Colonel Henry Colville
- Sir Hesketh Bell.



Dr.Carl Peters



Sir William Mackinnon

Sir William Mackinnon.

- Mackinnon was a Scottish businessman.
- In 1888 he started the Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO)
- The company's main activity was trading.
- However,the Company was also expected to rule the British territories in East Africa. In 1890, the Company sent Capt. Frederick Lugard as representative to Uganda.
- IBEACO also built many transport and lines of communication in East Africa. These include the Uganda Railway which was begun in 1896 at the coastal town of Mombasa in Kenya.

Dr.Carl Peters.

- He was a German colonialist.
- He played a leading role in the establishment of German rule in Tanganyika, Rwanda and Burundi.
- He was the leader of the German East Africa Company (GEACO) which had been formed to carry out trade in East Africa.
- The company helped to administer Germany colonies in East Africa.

- He signed treaties with chiefs in the interior including Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda with whom he signed an agreement in 1890.

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.

- Scramble for Africa was the struggle among European countries to have territories in Africa.
- Partition of Africa was the peaceful sharing of African countries amongst European countries.

European countries which scrambled for African territories.

- Great Britain
- France
- Germany
- Portugal
- Spain
- Italy
- Belgium

Reasons for scramble for Africa (Why European countries wanted colonies in Africa)

- They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
- They wanted to invest their surplus capital.
- They wanted to find market for their processed goods.
- To get more space for resettling excess population.
- The desire for political pride.

The BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884

- This was a meeting in which European colonial powers discussed the partition of Africa.
- The conference was held in Berlin, Germany.
- The conference was called by king Leopold II of Belgium.
- The Berlin conference was chaired by Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck, the Prime minister of Germany by then.
- It was held purposely to find peaceful means of partitioning Africa (sharing African countries amongst European powers).



Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck

Effects of Partition of Africa.

- It led to creation of new states.
- Africans lost their independence.
- Some people lost their historical origin.
- It led to separation of communities.

✓ **Note:** *-As a result of partition of Africa, Uganda and Kenya were given to* ***Britain*** *while Tanzania, Rwanda and Burundi were given to* ***Germany.***

Results of the Berlin Conference.

- It led to establishment of colonial spheres of influence in Africa.
- It brought order to the acquisition of territories in Africa.
- It led to creation of new boundaries of some countries in Africa.

The Anglo-German agreement of 1886.

- It was the first agreement to be signed between Germany and Britain over their spheres of influence in East Africa.
- In this agreement, Tanzania was given to Germany while Kenya was given to Britain.
- The sultan of Zanzibar was given a 10 mile (16km) coastal strip, while Germany and Britain divided the hinterland between themselves.
- Uganda, Rwanda and Burundi were not partitioned in this agreement.

The Anglo-German agreement of 1890.(Heligoland treaty)

- This agreement gave Britain influence over Uganda in exchange for the Heligoland islands in Europe with Germany.
- It is sometimes called the Heligoland treaty because Britain handed over the Heligoland islands to Germany in exchange for Uganda.
- Rwanda and Burundi became part of the Germany territory in East Africa.

Results of the Heligoland treaty.

- Uganda became a British territory.
- Germany surrendered Witu land to Britain.
- Britain surrendered Heligoland islands to Germany.
- Zanzibar and Pemba were recognised as British protectorates.

ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

Methods used by the colonialists to establish their rule in East Africa.

- Use of military force.
- Through signing agreements/ treaties.
- Through divide and rule policy (fueling existing misunderstandings)
- Use of trading companies like IBEACo, GEACo.
- Through missionary work.
- Use of collaborators.

Problems faced during the establishment of colonial rule

- Limited funds.
- Resistance from the natives.
- Absence of a centralised system of administration in some areas.
- Difficulty in communication with the African natives.
- Tribal wars in some communities.

(a) **Use of military force.**

- It was mainly used in areas where the East African natives resisted against colonial rule.
- This method was mainly used by the Germans in Tanganyika which made them to be hated by the natives.

(b) **Signing of treaties.**

- A treaty is a formal agreement between two or more people.
- Treaties were signed in areas where the African natives voluntarily accepted colonial rule.

Colonial agreements that were signed in Uganda.

- The 1894 Protectorate treaty
- The 1900 Buganda agreement
- The 1900 Tooro agreement.
- The 1901 Ankole agreement.
- The 1933 Bunyoro agreement.

(i) **The 1894 Protectorate treaty**

- It was the first colonial agreement to be signed in Uganda.
- It was signed between Kabaka Mwanga and Sir Gerald Portal.
- It was known as the protectorate treaty because the British agreed to protectorate Buganda and the entire Uganda from other colonial powers.

(ii) **The 1900 Buganda Agreement**

- The 1900 Buganda Agreement was signed between Buganda kingdom and the British protectorate government
- It was signed to strengthen British Authority over Buganda kingdom
- By the time this agreement was signed, Kabaka Daudi Chwa II was the king but was still an infant

- **By the time of the Buganda Agreement, Kabaka Mwanga had been exiled by the British to Seychelles island in Indian ocean.**

Signatories of the 1900 Buganda agreement.

- **Sir Harry Johnston (on behalf of the British Protectorate government).**
- **Sir Apollo Kaggwa (on behalf of Buganda kingdom).**

Note:

- ✓ ***Kabaka Mwanga*** *was unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was in exile*
- ✓ ***Kabaka Daudi Chwa II*** *was unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was still an infant/ young*
- ✓ *Kabaka Daudi Chwa ruled Buganda with the help of the regents.*
- ✓ ***A Regent*** *is a person who is appointed to rule on behalf of an infant king.*

Regents of Kabaka Daudi Chwa.

- ✓ *Sir Apollo Kaggwa*
- ✓ *Stanslas Mugwanya*
- ✓ *Zakaria Kisingiri*

Terms of the 1900 Buganda Agreement

- **Land**
- **Governance**
- **Taxation**

Recommendations of the 1900 Buganda Agreement.

- ❖ **Gun and hut taxes were to be introduced.**
- ❖ **Buganda land was to be divided into crown land and mailo land.**
- ❖ **Kabaka's powers were to be reduced and added to the lukiiko.**
- ❖ **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was to be changed to His Highness.**
- ❖ **Buganda kingdom was to be enlarged and divided into 20 counties.**
- ❖ **The number of members on the Lukiiko was to be increased.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Mailo land*** *was given to the kabaka and his chiefs while* ***crown land*** *was given to the British protectorate government.*

  Why the British colonialists had to be given the crown land.
- ✓ *To get land for building schools, hospitals, churches, administrative offices etc.*

Effects of the 1900 Buganda Agreement

- ❖ **Gun and hut taxes were introduced**
- ❖ **Buganda land was divided into crown land and mailo land**
- ❖ **Kabaka's powers were reduced and given to the lukiiko**
- ❖ **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was changed to His Highness**
- ❖ **Buganda kingdom was enlarged and divided into 20 counties**
- ❖ **The number of members on the Lukiiko was increased.**

(iii) Tooro Agreement of 1900

- **The Agreement was signed between omukama Kasagama of Tooro and Sir Gerald Portal on behalf of the British.**
- **This Agreement made Tooro lose her independence to the British.**
- **The agreement led to the introduction of hut and gun taxes in Tooro land**

Effects of the 1900 Tooro Agreement.

- ❖ **Hut and gun taxes were introduced.**
- ❖ **Crown land was set aside and become part of the British government.**
- ❖ **Tooro became part of Buganda protectorate.**
- ❖ **Tooro was officially separated from Bunyoro.**
- ❖ **Omukama was recognised as the traditional ruler of Tooro.**
- ❖ **Tooro boundaries were defined and demarcated.**

(iv) Bunyoro Agreement of 1933

- It was signed between Sir Bernard Henry Bourdillon on behalf of the British protectorate government and Omukama Tito Gafabusa Winyi II.
- It was signed to strengthen British rule in Bunyoro region.

(v) The 1901 Ankole Agreement

- It was signed between Omugabe Kahaya of Ankole and Sir Fredrick Jackson on behalf of the British
- In this agreement, hut and gun taxes were introduced.
- The counties of Igara, Kajara, Bahweju, and Bunyaruguru were taken away from Bunyoro and added to Ankole

Effects of the 1901 Ankole Agreement

- Ankole kingdom was enlarged. eg Buhweju, Igara, Kajara and Bunyaruguru were added to it.
- Hut and gun taxes were introduced.
- Ankole became part of Uganda protectorate.

(c) USE OF COLLABORATORS.

- Collaborators were the East African natives who helped the colonialists in establishing their rule in different parts of East Africa.

Reasons why some East African natives collaborated with the colonialists.

- They wanted to get favour from the colonialists.
- Kings and chiefs wanted to get military support.
- Some wanted to enrich themselves.
- Some feared the military strength of the colonialists.

Roles played by the collaborators.

- They helped in signing colonial agreements.
- They helped in enforcing colonial policies.
- They acted as interpreters for the colonialists.
- They provided information to the colonialists.

People who collaborated with the British.

- Semei Kakungulu.
- Nabongo Mumia of Wanga.
- Nuwa Mbaguta.
- Chief Lenana of the Masai.
- Chief Merere of Sangu in Tanzania.
- Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- Omukama Kasagama.



Semei Kakungulu



Nuwa Mbaguta



Sir Apollo Kaggwa



Omukama Kasagama

SEMEI KAKUNGULU.

- Semei Kakungulu brought the Eastern parts of Uganda under colonial rule.
- He introduced the Buganda system of administration in Eastern Uganda.
- He encouraged cash crop growing in Eastern Uganda. This helped to increase household income of the people of Eastern Uganda.
- He encouraged the people of Eastern Uganda to plant trees (Mvule trees).
- He constructed roads in Eastern Uganda which helped to ease British administration.

- He appointed Buganda agents to become chiefs in Eastern and Northern Uganda.
- He helped Colonel Colville to capture Kabaka Mwanga and Omukama Kabalega in Lango 1n 1899 and were exiled to Seychelles islands.
  - ***Note***:-*Semei Kakungulu tried to extend British rule in North Eastern Uganda (Karamoja) but he failed. This was because the people in North Eastern Uganda were hostile. The British also never had interest in the dry area of Karamoja since it couldn't favour crop growing.*

Ways Semei kakungulu managed to establish British rule in Eastern Uganda

- He built roads in Eastern Uganda
- He built administrative posts in Eastern Uganda
- He signed treaties with the local chiefs

NUWA MBAGUTA

- He was the Prime minister of Ankole.
- He extended British rule in Western Uganda
- He encouraged the building of feeder roads in Ankole.
- He planted trees in Ankole and educated people on their importance.
- He fought against illiteracy by supporting the building of schools in Ankole

OMUKAMA KASAGAMA.

- He was he king of Tooro.
- He welcomed the British to his kingdom.
- The British under Capt.Lugard gave him military support to defeat Omukama Kabalega and restored him onto his throne.

NABONGO MUMIA.

- He was the king of the Luhya people of Wanga kingdom.
- He signed treaties which helped top put Wanga kingdom under the British rule.

Reasons why some East African natives collaborated with the colonialists.

- They wanted to get favour from the colonialists.
- Kings and chiefs wanted to get military support.
- Some wanted to enrich themselves.
- Some feared the military strength of the colonialists.

Roles played by the collaborators.

- They helped in signing colonial agreements.
- They helped in enforcing colonial policies.
- They acted as interpreters for the colonialists.
- They provided information to the colonialists.

(d) How missionary work led to colonisation of East Africa.

- Missionary teachings caused divisions among people which weakened the African societies.
- Missionary teachings softened the hearts of the Africans which made them warmly welcome the colonialists.
- Missionaries called their home governments for protection.
- They acted as interpreters for the Africans and the colonialists.
- They signed treaties which were used by the colonialists to take over colonies.
- They educated and created a class of collaborators.
- They supplied information used by colonialists to improve their rule.

(e) Through trading companies. eg. IBEACO, GEACO

- The colonialists at first used trading companies in their administration. This was because the colonial governments were yet ready to take direct control of their colonies.
- For example on 3rd September 1888 the British company was recorgnised and given a royal charter under the name Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO) to administer Kenya and Uganda.

Trading companies that operated in East Africa include;

- Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO)
- German East Africa Company (GEACO)

Reasons why the colonialists ended company rule in East Africa.

- ❖ The companies had few administrators.
- ❖ They had opposition from missionaries and Africans.
- ❖ They lacked enough funds to meet administration costs.

EAST AFRICA UNDER COLONIAL RULE.

Colonial administrative systems that were used in East Africa.
(Methods used by the colonialists to administer East African countries)

In East Africa, European colonialists mainly used two systems of administration.
These were;

- Direct rule
- Indirect rule

i) DIRECT RULE

- This was the system of administration where the colonialists ruled the natives directly by themselves.
- The colonialists took direct control of their territories.
- Under this system, the colonialists collected taxes directly from the natives and also supervised the growing of cash crops.
- The German colonialists used Direct rule to administer Tanzania.

Reasons why Direct rule was used.

- ❖ The colonialists wanted to promote their culture.
- ❖ They wanted to show their superiority over the Africans.
- ❖ They wanted to exploit resources of their countries of control.

Effects of Direct rule

a) On the Africans

- ❖ Local leaders lost control over their territories.
- ❖ It led to over exploitation of Africa's resources.
- ❖ It limited the provision of social services.
- ❖ It was harsh and oppressive to the natives.

b) On the Colonialists.

- ❖ It increased rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It increased colonial expenditure.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the East African natives and the colonialists.
- ❖ It made it very difficult for some colonial policies to be implemented.

ii) INDIRECT RULE.

- This was the system of colonial administration where local leaders were used to rule the natives on behalf of the colonialists.
- In this system, local chiefs and kings took control of colonies on behalf of the colonialists.
- Local leaders encouraged and supervised the growing of cash crops and collected taxes on behalf of the colonialists.
- It was mainly used by the British in Uganda.

Reasons why the colonialists used Indirect rule.

- ❖ To control rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It was cheap in terms of paying local leaders.
- ❖ They wanted to increase manpower for the colonialists.
- ❖ They wanted to ease communication with their subjects.

Advantages of Indirect rule.

a) To the Africans.

- ❖ Local leaders learnt new methods of administration.
- ❖ It preserved the cultural practices of the natives.
- ❖ Kingdoms and chiefdoms were retained.

b) To the Colonialists.

- ❖ It was cheap to pay local leaders.
- ❖ It reduced rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It made communication between the natives and the colonialists easy.

Disadvantages of Indirect rule.

- ❖ It promoted hatred by the natives towards local leaders.
- ❖ It caused divisions among the natives.
- ❖ Native leaders were used as puppets by the colonialists.

GERMAN RULE IN TANGANYIKA.

- Tanganyika was at first ruled by German East Africa Company (GEACO) from 1887-1891 under the German administrator called Carl Peters.
- The administrative base of GEACO was at Bagamoyo.
- Later, the German government took over the administration of Tanganyika.
- The name that was given to Tanganyika under the German rule was German East Africa.

Roles of the German East Africa Company (GEACO) in Tanganyika.

- ❖ It controlled Tanganyika on behalf of the German government.
- ❖ It collected taxes from the leaders and ports.
- ❖ It built the first railway line in East Africa called Tanga-Korogwe railway.
- ❖ It carried out trade in agricultural produce.

Reasons why the German government ended company rule in Tanganyika.

- ❖ The company had few administrators.
- ❖ The company lacked enough funds to set up effective administration.
- ❖ The company had opposition from missionaries and Africans.

Changes made by the German government in the administration of Tanganyika.

- ❖ They introduced direct rule in Tanganyika.
- ❖ It transferred the administrative headquarters of the German colonial government from Bagamoyo to Dar-es-salaam
- ❖ The Germans also introduced a system of indirect rule in areas that had strong centralised traditional governments eg. Karagwe.
- ❖ It appointed the Akidas (chiefs) and the Jumbes (sub chiefs) to help them in the administration.
  - -Jumbes were headmen or leaders of clans or small groups.
  - -Akidas were usually Arabs or Swahilis.
- ❖ The Akidas collected taxes and supervised the growing of cash crops.

Why the Germans transferred the administrative offices from Bagamoyo to Dar-es-salaam.

- Dar-es-salaam had good natural harbours.
- Dar-es-salaam was well positioned for trade as compared to Bagamoyo.

Characteristics of German rule in Tanganyika.

- ❖ There was forced labour.
- ❖ There was high taxation of the Africans.
- ❖ Africans were denied their rights.
- ❖ Africans were denied respect by the Germans.

Reasons why German rule was hated (unpopular) in Tanganyika.

- **The Germans were harsh and cruel to the Africans.**
- **The Germans stopped Africans from growing their cash crops.**
- **They also forced Africans to work on their plantations with little or no pay.**
- **The Germans had no respect for African natives.**
- **The Germans set up rules that denied Africans their rights.**

The First World war and The End of German rule in Tanganyika.

- **World war I began in August 1914 and ended in 1918.**
- **It was started by German and her allies against Britain and her allies.**
- **The war started in Europe but spread in other parts of the world where the leading colonial powers had colonised.**
- **East Africa got involved in the war when German attacked British territories in East Africa.**
- **Many East African natives were recruited in order to defend themselves and their territories from the enemy attacks.**
- **Eventually, Germany was defeated.**
- **The League of Nations was an international organisation that was formed to prevent outbreak of another world war.**
- **It punished Germany by taking away all her colonies in Africa including Tanganyika.**
- **The League of nations gave German East Africa (Tanganyika) to Britain to rule it as a mandate territory. German East Africa was renamed Tanganyika.**
- **Rwanda and Burundi were given to Belgium. This was because Democratic Republic of Congo was a Belgian colony.**
- **Today Rwanda and Burundi use French as their official language. This is because they were ruled Belgians who speak French.**

Note:

- ✓ *European governments which were given mandate territories were meant to rule them for the good of the natives, till they were ready for their independence.*
- ✓ ***Mandate territories*** *were the former colonies of Germany that were given to other European countries by the League of Nations after world war I.*
- ✓ *Tanganyika was a mandate territory of the British while Rwanda and Burundi were mandate territories of the Belgians.*
- ✓ *East African countries were involved in the war because their colonial masters took men to work as soldiers and porters in the war zones.*

Effects of the world war in East Africa.

- **It led to death of many people.**
- **The Germans were forced to leave their farms in Tanganyika.**
- **It led to outbreak of famine in East Africa.**
- **International trade stopped.**
- **It led to destruction of property.**
- **East Africa came under British control except Rwanda and Burundi which went to Belgium.**
- **Many families suffered because their men had died.**

TANGANYIKA UNDER THE BRITISH RULE.

- **Britain took over German East Africa as a mandate territory of league of nations in 1919.**
- **The name changed from German East Africa to Tanganyika.**
- **Britain ruled Tanganyika for the good of the natives.**

Steps taken by the British to end the German influence in Tanganyika.

- **English replaced as the official language.**

- ❖ The British discouraged white settlement and developed Tanganyika as a black man's country.
- ❖ German settlers and missionaries were expelled.
- ❖ Traditional chiefs replaced the Jumbes and Akidas.
- ❖ The country's name was changed from German East Africa to Tanganyika.

British colonial Governors in Tanganyika.

- Sir Horace Byatt 1916-1925.
- Sir Donald Cameron 1925-1931.
- Sir Stewart Symes 1931-1934.
- Sir Harold MacMichael 1934-1938.
- Sir Mark Young 1938-1945
- Sir Francis Jackson 1942-1945.
- Sir William Battershill 1945-1949.
- Sir Edward Twining 1949-1958.
- Sir Richard Turnbull 1958-1961.

Sir Horace Byatt 1916-1925.

- ➢ He was appointed as the first British governor of Tanganyika.
- ➢ He was criticised for refusing to favour European settlers or give them a share in the government.

Sir Donald Cameron 1925-1931.

- ➢ He established indirect rule in local government in Tanganyika.
- ➢ He appointed local chiefs with powers to collect taxes, settle disputes and carryout some administrative duties.
- ➢ He brought the settlers in to share in the government.
- ➢ He established the Legislative council (LEGCO) in 1926.
- ➢ However, he excluded the Africans whom he believed were not ready to share in the national government.

Sir Richard Turnbull 1958-1961.

- ➢ He was the last British governor in Tanganyika.
- ➢ He was the governor at the time of independence.

BRITISH RULE IN KENYA.

- During colonial rule Kenya was known as British East Africa.
- It was declared a British protectorate in 1895 by Sir A.H Hardicofe and later named a British colony in 1905.
- A colony is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.
- Kenya was a colony of the British in East Africa.

Steps that were taken to make Kenya a colony of the British.

- ❖ They built the Kenya-Uganda railway.
- ❖ They encouraged Whites settlement in Kenya.

Colonial administrators in British East Africa.

Commissioners.

- Sir Charles Eliot 1900-1904
- Sir Donald Stewart 1904-1905

Governors

- Sir James Sadler 1905-1909
- Sir Percy Girouard 1909-1912

- **Sir Henry Belfield 1912-1917**
- **Sir Charles Calvert Bowring 1917-1919**
- **Sir Edward Northey 1919-1922**
- **Sir Robert Coryndon 1922-1925**
- **Sir Edward Grigg 1925-1930**
- **Sir Henry Moore 1930-1931**
- **Sir Joseph Byrne 1931-1936**
- **Sir Armigel Wade 1936-1937**
- **Sir Robert Brooke-Popham 1937-1940**
- **Sir Henry Moore 1940-1944**
- **Sir Philip Mitchell 1944-1952**
- **Sir Evelyn Baring 1952-1959**
- **Sir Walter Coutts 4th Oct 1959-23rd Oct 1959**
- **Sir Patrick Renison 1959-1962**
- **Sir Eric Griffith-Jones 1962-4th Jan 1963**
- **Sir Malcolm MacDonald 4th Jan 1963-12th Dec 1963**

THE WHITE SETTLERS IN KENYA.

- **The first white settler to come to Kenya arrived in 1886.**
- **They were mainly the European farmers and they settled in the Kenya Highlands which were also known as Whites highlands.**
- **Lord Delamere encouraged the coming of white settlers in Kenya.**
- **The Uganda railway was constructed in order to encourage the Whites settlement in Kenya.**
- **The White settlers displaced the Kikuyu who were originally living in the Kenya highlands. This resulted into the Mau Mau rebellion.**

Why the White settlers settled in the Kenya highlands.

- **The area had fertile soils for crop growing.**
- **The area receives reliable rainfall which favours crop crowing.**

Dairy farming is mainly practised in the Kenya highlands due to the:

- **Presence of plenty of pasture for animals.**
- **Presence of cool climate which favours dairy farming.**
- **Absence of many disease vectors in the Kenya highlands.**

Effects of the coming the White settlers in Kenya.

- **The natives lost their fertile land.**
- **Many Kenyans were forced to provide forced labour on the white settlers' plantations.**
- **They discouraged Africans from growing crops.**
- **It led to outbreak of Mau Mau rebellion.**
- **It led to displacement of the natives.**
- **There was a lot of discrimination against the Africans through the colour bar policy.**
- **The colonial government attended to interest of settlers at the expense of Africans.**

Note:

- ***Colour bar policy*** *was the system of racial segregation where the natives were not allowed to share the same social services with the whites.*
- ***Kipande policy*** *in Kenya restricted the movement of the blacks in the country.*
- *The Kenyan natives were not allowed to move from one part of the country to another without identity cards.*

Reasons why the natives in Kenya were not allowed to grow cash crops.

- **The white settlers didn't want the competition in the market.**
- **The white settlers wanted to use Africans for cheap labour.**
- **The fear by the settlers that rich Africans would be difficult to manage.**

The Legislative Council (LEGCO) in Kenya.

- The Legislative Council in Kenya was established in 1907 by Governor Sir James Sadler.
- Mr. Eliud Mathu was the first African representative to be appointed on the LEGCO in 1944.
- The LEGCO was formed mainly to serve the interests of the white settlers in Kenya.

COLONIAL RULE IN UGANDA

EGYPT ATTEMPTS TO COLONISE UGANDA.

- The first country that attempted to colonise Uganda was Egypt.
- Egypt wanted to have full control over the flow of River Nile from its source.
- Khedive Ismael of Egypt appointed governors to help him establish Egyptian rule in the Equatorial province.
- Equatorial Province was an area made up of Southern part of Sudan and Northern Uganda.

Governors of the Equatorial province.

- Sir Samuel Baker.
- Charles Gordon
- Emin Pasha



Charles Gordon



Emin Pasha

Sir Samuel Baker.

- Sir Samuel Baker (in 1870) was the first governor of the Equatorial province.
- He built Fort Patiko in Northern Uganda in 1872 for protection against his enemies.
- He protected the people of Northern Uganda from the Khartoumers who were slave traders from Egypt and Sudan.

Charles Gordon

- Charles Gordon (in 1874) was appointed as the 2nd governor of the Equatorial province replacing Sir Samuel Baker.
- Gordon built fort Mruli near Masindi.
- He was more successful in creating additional trading posts in this area.
- In 1876, his views crashed with those of the Egyptian governor of Khartoum forcing him to go back to London.

Emin Pasha

- In 1878, Gordon was succeeded by the Chief Medical Officer of the Equatorial province Mehemet Emin Pasha originally known as Eduard Schnitzer.
- Pasha built Fort Wadelai in the Equatorial province.
- Pasha made his headquarters in Lado (now in South Sudan)
- He faced Mahdi revolt in Southern Sudan.
- Pasha managed to request assistance from Britain via Buganda.
- He was later rescued by Henry Morton Stanley and Emin Pasha was the last governor of the Equatorial Province.
- In 1898, the Mahdist state was overthrown by the Anglo-Egyptian force led by the British Field Marshal Lord Kitchener and the Equatorial was administered by the British.

BRITISH RULE IN UGANDA.

- Uganda was colonised by Britain.
- Uganda uses English as her official language because she was colonized by the British who speak English.
- Uganda is a member of the Commonwealth of Nations since she was colonised by the British.

- **The British established their rule in Uganda through a trading company called IBEACO. This company was represented by Captain Frederick Lugard.**

<u>Captain Frederick Lugard as a representative of IBEACO in Uganda.</u>

- **From 1888-1894 the British ruled Uganda through the Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO).**
- **Frederick Lugard arrived in Uganda in 1890 as a representative of IBEACO.**
- **He built Fort Edward at Old Kampala hill where he raised the company's flag. (IBEACO flag).**
- **He signed an agreement with Kabaka Mwanga to bring Buganda under the control of IBEACO.This agreement was also allowing missionaries to move freely in Buganda, and also stopped Buganda from signing treaties with other European countries.**
- **He signed a treaty of friendship with Omugabe Ntare of Ankole in 1891.**



Capt. Frederick Lugard

- **He restored Omukama Kasagama of Tooro onto his throne.**
- **Lugard brought the Sudanese soldiers who had been left behind by Emin Pasha in the Equatorial province to Buganda to help him in maintaining peace.**

Note:

✓ *The Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny in 1897 against Capt.Lugard.*

✓ ***A mutiny** is a rebellion staged by armed forces against their officers.*

<u>Why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny.</u>

- *They were underpaid.*
- *They were underfed.*
- *They were tired of fighting.*
- *They wanted their living conditions to be improved.*

✓ *On 31 March 1893, the IBEACO formally ended its involvement in Uganda.*

✓ *Missionaries, led by **<u>Alfred Tucker</u>**, requested the British government to take over the administration of Uganda in place of the IBEACO, arguing that British withdrawal would lead to a continuance of the religious civil war.*



Bishop Alfred Tucker

<u>Sir Gerald Portal.</u>

- **He was sent to study the political situation in Uganda.**
- **Sir Gerald Portal was sent to Uganda to write a report on the activities of IBEACO.**
- **He raised the British flag (union Jack).**
- **He built Fort Portal in Kabarole and Fort Alice in Entebbe.**
- **He recommended Uganda to be a British Protectorate.**
- **Protectorate is a country under the protection of another country.**
- **Portal established a settlement between the French and British Missionaries in Uganda.**
- **On 1 April, 1893, Portal hauled down/ lowered the flag of the Imperial British East Africa Company at <u>Mengo</u> (the Kabaka's residence) and hoisted the <u>Union Jack.</u>**
- **On 29 May 1893, he signed a treaty with <u>Mwanga II</u>, the Kabaka.**
- **Portal returned to Britain and recommended the declaration of Uganda as a protectorate. He died from <u>typhoid fever</u> in London on 25 January 1894, at the age of 36.**
- **On 18 June 1894, Uganda was declared a British Protectorate. In this case, it is therefore important to note that General Portal never declared Uganda as a British protectorate. The declaration was made by <u>Lord Rosebery</u> five months after Portal's death.**
- **The town of <u>Fort Portal</u> in Western Uganda, where Portal had his base, is named after him.**

BRITISH COLONIAL ADMINISTRATORS IN UGANDA.

- **Frederick Lugard (26 Dec 1890 – May 1892)**
- **Sir Gerald Portal (1 Apr 1893 – 30 May 1893)**
- **James Ronald Leslie MacDonald (30 May 1893 – 4 Nov 1893) (acting administrator)**



Sir Gerald Portal

British Commissioners of Uganda (1893–1910)

- **Sir Henry Edward Colville (4 Nov 1893 – 10 May 1894)**
- **Frederick Jackson (10 May 1894 – 24 Aug 1894)**
- **Ernest James Berkeley (24 Aug 1894 – Dec 1899)**
- **Sir Harry Johnston (Dec 1899 – Nov 1901)**
- **Sir James Sadler (1 January 1902 – 20 Nov 1907)**
- **Sir Henry Hesketh Bell (20 Nov 1907 – 31 Jan 1910)**
- **Sir Harry Cordeaux (1 Feb 1910 – 18 Oct 1910)**

British Governors of Uganda (1910–1962)

- **Sir Harry Cordeaux (1910–1911)**
- **Sir Frederick Jackson (1911–1918)**
- **Sir Robert Coryndon (1918–1922)**
- **Sir Geoffrey Archer (1922–1925)**
- **Sir William Gowers (1925–1932)**
- **Sir Bernard Henry Bourdillon (1932–1935)**
- **Sir Philip Mitchell (1935–1940)**
- **Sir Charles Dundas (1940–1945)**
- **Sir John Hathorn Hall (1945–1952)**
- **Sir Andrew Cohen (1952–1957)**
- **Sir Frederick Crawford (1957–1961)**
- **Sir Walter Coutts (1961–1962)**



Henry colville



Sir Harry Johnston

- **Captain Frederick Lugard.**
  - ✓ **He was the representative of IBEACO in Uganda.**
- **Colonel Henry Colville**
  - ✓ **He brought Bunyoro under British rule**
- **Sir Harry Johnston**
  - ✓ **He signed the 1900 Buganda agreement on behalf of the British protectorate government.**



Sir Hesketh Bell



Sir Robert Coryndon

- **Sir Hesketh Bell**
  - ✓ **He encouraged the growing of cash crops in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He linked the railway line from Jinja to Namasagali.**
  - ✓ **He introduced the first ford car in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He encouraged road construction in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He established steamers on Lake Victoria.**
- **Sir Frederick Jackson**
  - ✓ **He governed Uganda during the first world war**
  - ✓ **The building of Mulago hospital started during his time**
  - ✓ **He stopped Lamogi rebellion**

- **Sir Robert Coryndon**
  - ✓ **He formed the Legislative Council (LEGCO) in Uganda in 1921.**
- **Sir Geoffrey Archer**
  - ✓ **He opened up Makerere college.**
  - ✓ **He promoted education by building schools.**
- **Sir William Gowers**
  - ✓ **A department of education was set up by the government during his time/ term of office.**
- **Sir Bernald Bourdillon**
  - ✓ **He supported the establishment of more schools.**
- **Sir Philip Mitchell**
  - ✓ **He promoted higher education in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **He turned Makerere college into a university.**
- **Sir Charles Dundas**
  - ✓ **He governed Uganda during the second world war**
  - ✓ **He drew the development plan for Uganda**
- **Sir John Hathorn Hall**
  - ✓ **He stopped many riots against colonial rule in Uganda.**
  - ✓ **The first three Ugandans on the LEGCO were nominated during his term of office.**
- **Sir Andrew Cohen**
  - ✓ **Owen falls dam was completed in his term of office**
  - ✓ **Radio Uganda was opened during his term of office**
  - ✓ **Nyanza Textile Industries Limited (NYTIL) was built during his term.**
  - ✓ **The construction of the parliamentary building started during his term of office.**
  - ✓ **He exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain in 1953**



Sir Philip Mitchell



Sir John Hathorn Hall



Sir Andrew Cohen



Sir Edward Muteesa II being sent into exile

<u>Reasons why Kabaka Muteesa II was exiled.</u>

- **He rejected the proposed East African federation.**
- **He demanded Buganda's independence from Uganda.**

<u>Why the British wanted to form the East African federation.</u>

- **They wanted to ease administration.**
- **To promote economic cooperation among the three territories.**

Note:

- *Kabaka Muteesa II rejected the proposed East African Federation because he feared to lose Buganda's land to the British (White settlers).*
- *In 1948,* ***Mr.Creech Jones*** *advocated for the formation of the East African High Commission.*
- *The Commission was based in Nairobi. It controlled customs, taxes, postal services, meteorology, statistics, higher education, research and currency.*
- *When trade increased between the territories, the commission became the East African Common Services Organisation. This later became the East African Community in 1967.*
- *The exiling of Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain led to the* ***Kabaka crisis of 1953*** *in Buganda.*
- ***The Kabaka crisis*** *was a time when there were many riots in Buganda against the British colonialists.*
- *In order to enable the return of the kabaka from exile,* ***The Namirembe Agreement of 1955*** *was signed.*

- ***The Namirembe Agreement*** *was signed by* ***Keith Hankock*** *on behalf of the British and* ***Micheal Kintu*** *on behalf of Buganda kingdom.*

❖ **Sir Frederick Crawford**
- ✓ **He organised the first general elections in Uganda.**
- ✓ **The construction of the parliamentary building was completed during his term of office.**
- ✓ **The government health department was set up during his term of office.**

❖ **Sir Walter Coutts**
- ✓ **He was the last British governor in Uganda**
- ✓ **He granted Uganda her independence.**



Sir Walter Coutts

<u>THE FORMATION OF THE LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL (LEGCO) IN UGANDA</u>
- **LEGCO was a law making body during colonial rule.**
- **LEGCO served as the parliament during the colonial times.**
- **LEGCO was formed in 1921 during the time when <u>Sir Robert Corydon</u> was the British governor in Uganda.**

<u>Reasons for the formation of LEGCO</u>
❖ **To make laws.**
❖ **To advise the colonial government.**
❖ **To get information from various regions of Uganda.**

Note:
- ✓ *Ugandans had no representative on the LEGCO until 1945.*
- ✓ *When* ***Sir John Hathorn Hall*** *the British governor by the time the first Ugandan natives were nominated on the LEGCO.*
- ✓ *The natives were not happy with the LEGCO in 1921 because they were not represented on the LEGCO at all.*
- ✓ *The LEGCO used to set laws as the parliament of today does.*

<u>The first three Ugandans to be nominated on the LEGCO (in 1945)</u>
- **Kawalya Kaggwa from Buganda representing the Central region**
- **Yekonia Zirabamuzaale from Busoga representing the Eastern region**
- **Petero Nyangabyaki Akiiki from Bunyoro representing the Eastern Uganda.**

Note:*-In 1946,* ***Yekosofati Innyon*** *was nominated to represent the Northern region on the LEGCO in Uganda.*

<u>Ways LEGCO helped Ugandans to demand for independence.</u>
❖ **It gave the natives courage to air out their complaints.**
❖ **Native members on LEGCO encouraged their members to form associations.**
❖ **It encouraged the natives to demand for self rule.**
❖ **It laid a strong foundation for native leadership.**

Note:
- ✓ ***John V. Wild*** *was appointed as the chairperson of the* ***Wild Constitutional Committee*** *which was formed to find means of making members on the LEGCO directly elected by people.*
- ✓ *The committee was formed by* ***Sir Fredrick Crawford*** *in 1956.*
- ✓ *The committee recommended that there should be direct elections in all parts of the country based on a voters' register.*
- ✓ *It also recommended that the LEGCO would be called the* ***National assembly.***
- ✓ *The first elections were held in 1958.*
- ✓ ***Pumla Kisosonkole*** *became the first Ugandan woman on the LEGCO in 1957.*

<u>Role played by the LEGCO towards Uganda's independence.</u>
- ✓ *It gave Ugandans a chance to discuss matters that affected them.*
- ✓ *It was a platform for the Ugandans to demand for their independence from the colonialists.*

REACTIONS TO COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

- Some people of East Africa collaborated with the colonialists eg.Apollo Kaggwa, Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta, Nabongo Mumia etc.
- Others resisted against colonial rule.eg. Kabaka Mwanga, Omukama Kabalega, Chief Awich, etc.

COLONIAL RESISTERS IN EAST AFRICA.

- Resisters were the East African natives who opposed colonial rule.

Ways the East African natives resisted against colonial rule.

- Through staging rebellions.
- Through forming boycotts.
- Through forming riots and demonstrations.
- Through forming trade unions.

Examples of colonial resisters in East Africa.

- Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro.
- Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda.
- Chief Siki of the Nyamwezi.
- Chief Mkwawa of the Hehe.
- Abushiri Bin Salim.
- Kinjikitire Ngwale of Tanzania.
- Dedan Kimathi of Kenya.
- General China of Kenya.
- Chief Meli of the Chagga.
- Chief Awich of Payera in Acholi.

East African communities that strongly resisted against colonial rule.

- Banyoro of Uganda.
- Hehe of Tanzania.
- Ngoni of Tanzania.
- Yao of Tanzania.
- Matumbi of Tanzania.
- Nandi of Kenya.
- Kikuyu of Kenya.
- Acholi of Uganda.

Causes for the resistance against colonial rule in East Africa.

- Colonial rule was harsh and oppressive to the natives.
- Loss of powers by kings and chiefs.
- Loss of fertile land by the natives.
- Acquisition of military skills from world wars.
- Denial of the natives equal representation on the LEGCO.
- Imprisonment of the native nationalists.

Reasons why East African natives resisted colonial rule.

- To oppose heavy colonial taxes.
- To protect their independence.
- They wanted to regain their lost lands
- To oppose forced labour on plantations.
- To fight against the harsh and oppressive colonial rule.

Reasons why resistance against the colonial rule in East Africa was defeated / unsuccessful.

- The natives had inferior weapons.
- Disunity among the people of Uganda.
- The natives never had strong standing armies.
- The colonialists had better fighting skills.

REBELLIONS AGAINST COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

- A rebellion is an occasion when people choose to fight those in authority.
- It is a violent act staged by many people in a country against unlawful acts by the government.
- Rebellions against colonial rule were led by the African natives who had acquired education and military skills.

Examples of rebellions staged against colonial rule in East Africa.

- Nyangire rebellion in Bunyoro
- Abushiri revolt in Tanzania.
- Hehe rebellion in Tanzania
- Maji Maji rebellion in Tanzania.
- Mau Mau rebellion in Kenya.
- The Nandi resistance in Kenya.

- Lamogi rebellion in Acholi
- Mwanga's rebellion in Buganda
- The Sudanese mutiny

(i) Maji-Maji rebellion in Tanganyika.

- The Maji-Maji rebellion was the most fierce and greatest rebellion in Tanganyika (German East Africa)
- It took place between 1905 and 1907.
- It was led by Kinjikitire Ngwale in the Rufiji valley.
- The fighters mixed flour with water got from River Rufiji and smeared their bodies for protection hence the name Maji Maji rebellion.
- They believed that this mixture would turn the bullets from Germans' guns into water.
- The Ngoni, Matumbi, Yao and other Tanganyikans participated in the Maji Maji rebellion.

Causes of the Maji-Maji rebellion.

- The harsh treatment of the natives by the German administrators (Akidas and Jumbes)
- Forced cotton growing.
- Heavy taxation of the local people.
- Some people had lost their land to German settlers.
- The need to regain independence.
- Germans' arrogance and disrespect of African cultures.
- The replacement of German rulers by Akidas and Jumbes.

Results of the Maji-Maji rebellion.

(a) Positive effects.

- African workers were paid higher wages than before.
- Medical and education services were improved.
- The natives were allowed to grow cash crops.
- The Germans changed from direct rule to indirect rule.
- The taxes paid by Africans were reduced.

(b) Negative effects

- It led to destruction of property.
- There was great famine in areas affected.
- Many people lost their lives.
- It led to displacement of many people.



Maji Maji fighters

(ii) The Mau-Mau rebellion in Kenya.

- It was staged between 1951-1956.
- Mau-Mau stands for Mzungu Arudi Ulaya Mwafrika Apate Uhuru meaning "Let Europeans go to Europe so that the Africans can get their independence"
- The Mau Mau rebellion was staged by Kikuyu against the British land policy in which Africans became squatters.
- The military leaders of the Mau-Mau movement were Dedan Kimathi and General China.
- Its political leaders were Jomo Kenyatta and James Gichuru.
- The Mau Mau fighters hid in the Aberdare ranges which had thick forests making it difficult to be traced by the British troops.



Jomo Kenyatta was the political leader of Mau Mau rebellion.

Causes of the Mau-Mau rebellion.

- Loss of fertile land by the Kenyan natives.
- Heavy taxes and high prices for goods.
- Unbalanced representation on the LEGCO.
- Denial of the Africans to grow their own cash crops.
- Forced labour on plantations.

- To demand for independence.
- Under payment of African workers.

Main aims of the Mau-Mau Rebellion.

- To liberate African land from the white settlers.
- To end racial segregation (colour bar policy) and the Kipande system.
- To force the British grant independence to Kenyans.

Reasons why the Mau Mau rebellion took long to end.

- It involved skilled fighters.
- It involved many Kenyan societies.
- The fighters hid in the mountains and thick forests making it hard to be traced.

The Reaction of the British towards the Mau Mau rebellion in Kenya.

- They declared a state of emergency in Kenya.
- They banned African political organisations.
- They restricted the movement of the people.
- Many Africans were imprisoned.



Mau Mau fighters

Effects of the Mau Mau Rebellion.

(a) **Positive effects.**

- The colour bar policy was ended.
- It speeded up the independence process of Kenya.
- Kenyans regained the freedom to grow their own cash crops.
- It developed the spirit of nationalism in Kenya.
- The rights of the Kenyans were respected.

(b) **Negative effects.**

- Many people lost their lives.
- A lot of property was destroyed.
- Many people were displaced from their homes.
- People lived in fear of death.
- Many people were forced into reserves and detention camps.
- Prisoners suffered harsh treatment and poor living conditions.

(iii) **Abushiri rebellion in Tanganyika.**

- It was the first rebellion to be staged against colonial rule in Tanganyika.
- It was started in 1888 by the people of Pangani and it spread to the coastal areas of Tanganyika.
- Its leader was an Arab called **Abushiri Bin Salim** and an African chief called Bwanaheri.
- Abushiri Bin Salim was eventually defeated by the Germans and they hanged him.
- The people of the coast were forced to accept German rule.

Causes of the Abushiri revolt.

- Loss of political power and control over slave trade .
- The collection of taxes at the coast by Germans.

Effects of the Abushiri revolt.

- Many people lost their lives.
- A lot of property was destroyed
- The tax rates were reduced.
- It led to outbreak of famine.

(iv) **The Hehe Rebellion in Tanzania.**



Chief Mkwawa

- It was staged by the Wahehe people of Tanganyika in 1891.
- It was led by chief Mkwawa.
- To avoid being captured, Mkwawa hanged himself.
- His head was cut off by the Germans and was taken to Germany for scientific research on Africans' brain to see how it functions.

Causes of the Hehe rebellion.

- Chief Mkwawa wanted to regain control over trade in his area.
- The introduction of heavy taxes by the Germans.
- The massive killing (massacre) of Mkwawa's peace delegation by the Germans.

Effects of the Hehe rebellion.

- It led to outbreak of famine.
- It led to displacement of people.
- It led to death of many people.
- A lot of money was spent by the Germans to end the rebellion.
- It led to destruction of property.

(v) **Nyangire rebellion (1907)**

- Nyangire means I have refused
- It was staged by the Banyoro and led by Omukama Kabalega
- The main cause was "The Banyoro never wanted to be ruled by the Baganda chiefs who were the agents of the British.
- These Baganda chiefs were collaborating with the British.

Note:

- ✓ *On 9th April,1899, Kabalega was captured by the British together Mwanga of Buganda.*
- ✓ *Both of them were exiled to* ***Seychelles islands.***
- ✓ *Kabalega spent 24 years in exile. He was given permission to return to Bunyoro in 1923 but died in Jinja on April 6th, 1923.*
- ✓ *Mwanga died from exile in 1903.*

(vi) **The Lamogi rebellion**

- It was staged between 1911-1912 by the people of the Acholi against the British
- It was led by chief Awich of Payera in Acholi land.
- The main cause was forced gun registration policy by the British.
- The British wanted the people of Acholi to register their guns and pay taxes for them.
- It was a tactical way of disarming the Acholi.
- The Acholi were later defeated and disarmed.

(vii) **The Sudanese Mutiny**

- A mutiny is a rebellion staged by members of an armed force against their officers.
- The Sudanese Mutiny was staged in 1897-1878 by the Sudanese soldiers against the British.
- These soldiers were stationed at Eldama Ravine in the present day Kenya complained of little pay and delayed salaries.
- They marched towards Kampala, killing and looting as they went.
- The rebellion came to end with the help of Sir Apollo Kaggwa.

Why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny.

- They were underpaid.
- They were underfed.

- They were tired of fighting.
- They wanted their living conditions to be improved.

The effects of the rebellions against colonial rule in East Africa.

- They led to death of people.
- They led to displacement of people.
- They led to destruction of property.
- Some traditional leaders were exiled.
- They brought suffering and misery to the Africans.
- They united Africans in their fight against colonial rule.
- They promoted African nationalism.
- They helped Africans to protect themselves from oppression.

THE RISE OF AFRICAN NATIONALISM AND THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Nationalism** is the feeling of love for and pride in one's country.
- ***A nationalist*** is a person who has strong feeling of love for his / her country.
- These nationalists united people in their struggle for independence.
- **Patriotism** is the feeling of love for one's country and willingness to defend it.

Factors that led to the rise of African nationalism.

- The formation of political parties.
- Harassment of the natives by colonialists.
- Acquisition of European education.
- The influence of World War II.

The second world war contributed to the demand for independence in the following ways;

- African war veterans acquired guns
- African war veterans learnt new military skills.
- The war gave Africans courage to fight for their independence.
- The war united many African nationalists.

The prominent nationalists in East Africa include:

- Julius Nyerere
- Jomo Kenyatta
- Apollo Milton Obote
- Ignatius Kangave Musaazi
- Benedicto Kiwanuka
- Tom Mboya
- James Gichuru
- Dedan Kimathi

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

- **Independence** is the state of being free from social, political and economic oppression.
- **National independence** is the state when a country is free from control of another country.

The struggle for independence in East Africa was in two forms.
These were;
(i) Peaceful struggle.
(ii) Armed struggle.

- ***Peaceful struggle*** is when the East African natives used non-violent means to demand for independence.
- It was mainly used by the natives in Uganda.

The peaceful means of demanding for independence included;
-Formation of political parties.
-Formation of boycotts.
-Peaceful demonstrations.

- **Armed struggle** is when the East African natives used violent means/ fire arms to demand for their independence.
- It was mainly used by the natives in Kenya.

Qn:*How was the attainment of Uganda's independence different from that of Kenya?*

-Uganda got her independence through peaceful struggle while Kenya got hers through armed struggle.

Reasons why the Ugandan natives demanded for independence.

a) Economic reasons.

- **They wanted to regain their lost land.**
- **They wanted to be free from unfair colonial policies.like paying heavy taxes.**
- **They wanted to have control over their natural resources.**
- **They wanted to have fair prices for goods.**

b) Political reasons.

- **They wanted to participate in choosing their own leaders.**
- **Traditional leaders wanted to regain their lost powers.**
- **They wanted to have equal representations on the Legislative council (LEGCO).**

c) Social reasons

- **They wanted to end racial segregation by the Whites.**
- **They wanted to revive African culture.**
- **They wanted to be free from forced labour.**
- **They wanted to have access to better social services.**
- **They wanted to have their rights respected by the Whites.**

Problems the people of East Africa faced during their struggle for independence.

- **Some of them were imprisoned.**
- **Some of them were murdered.**
- **Some political parties were banned.**
- **Some had their movements restricted to particular places.**
- **Disunity among all people in Uganda.**
- **Some African natives were tortured.**
- **Some of them were sent into exile. For example -Sir Edward Muteesa II who was exiled to Britain in 1953 by Sir Andrew Cohen.**

THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- **A political party is an organisation comprising of people with the same political ideologies and goals.**
- **Political parties were formed mainly to demand independence.**
- **They united people in their struggle for independence.**

Why political parties were formed during colonial rule.

- **To unite people in their struggle for independence.**
- **To deal with common problems affecting people.**
- **To defend and fight for rights of Africans.**
- **To protest harsh government laws and policies.**
- **To advise the government.**

Examples of political parties that were formed in Uganda before independence

- **Uganda National Congress (UNC)**
- **Uganda People's Congress (UPC)**
- **Uganda Patriotic Movement (UPM)**
- **Democratic Party (DP)**
- **Kabaka Yekka (KY)**
- **United Congress Party (UCP)**

The Uganda National Congress (UNC)

- **It was the first political party to be formed in Uganda**
- **It was formed by Ignatius Kangave Musaazi and Abu-baker Kakyama Mayanja in 1952**

Objectives of UNC

- To struggle for Uganda's independence.
- To unite all Ugandans for a common goal.
- To promote democracy in Uganda.
- To promote the economy in the interests of Uganda.

Challenges faced by UNC

- It faced a strong opposition from the Lukiiko
- Internal problems by party leaders.



Ignatius Kangave Musaazi

Democratic Party (DP).

- It was formed by Joseph Kasolo in 1954.
- Joseph Kasolo was the first leader of DP and later was replaced by Matayo Mugwanya in 1956.
- Matayo Mugwanya was replaced by Benedicto Kiwanuka in 1958.
- DP was mainly for Catholics.
- In 1961, General elections were held and DP won the elections followed by UPC.
- This made Benedicto Kiwanuka who was the leader of DP by then become the first Chief Minister of Uganda.



Benedicto Kiwanuka

Reasons for the formation on DP.

- To demand for Uganda's independence.
- To protect the rights of the Catholics mainly in the government.

United Congress Party.

- It was led by David Lubega.
- It support traditional rulers and supported a federal system of government.

Uganda People's Union (UPU)

- It was formed in 1959 by the members of the LEGCO representing various districts outside Buganda.
- It was led by Wilberforce Nadiope.

Uganda People's Congress (UPC)

- It was formed on March 10th 1960 and Dr. Milton Obote was chosen to be its leader.
- UPC was formed by splinter members of UNC and UPU.
- It made an alliance with Kabaka Yekka party and won the 1962 general elections leading Uganda to independence.
- Its main objective was to lead Uganda to independence.



Dr. Apollo Milton Obote

Kabaka Yekka (KY).

- It was formed by Simeon Masembe and Augustine Kamya who were the members of Buganda Lukiiko.

Objectives of Kabaka Yekka.

- To defend the Kabaka and his Kingdom.
- To promote the interests of Buganda kingdom and the Kabaka in the politics of Uganda.

Note:

- ✓ ***KY*** *made an alliance with* ***UPC*** *which gave UPC more strength to win* ***DP*** *in the 1962 general elections.*
- ✓ ***An Alliance*** *refers to uniting of people, states or parties to achieve a common goal.*

THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN KENYA.

- **Kenya African Union (KAU)**
- **Kenya African National Union (KANU)**
- **Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU)**
- **The East African Association (EAA)**
- **Kenya African National Congress (KANC)**

The Kenya African Union (KAU).

- **It was the first political party to be formed in Kenya.**
- **It was formed in 1944 and James Gichuru was its first president.**
- **Kenyatta joined it in 1944 and he became its president in 1946.**
- **KAU was banned in 1953 and Kenyatta was imprisoned in the same year.**

The Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU)

- **It was formed in 1960 by the people of Northern Nyanza and the coast.**
- **Its leaders were Mr Ronald Ngala, Mr Masinde Muliro and Mr Moi Daniel.**

The Kenya African National Union (KANU).

- **In March 1960, most of the African leaders on the Legislative council formed the Kenya African National Union (KANU) with Mr.James Gichuru as its president and Mr. Oginga Odinga as the vice president.**
- **In 1962, Mzee Jomo Kenyatta replaced James Gichuru as its president.**
- **In the same year, KANU led Kenya to its independence under Jomo Kenyatta.**

  Note:
  - *KANU won the I961 general elections but refused to form a government until August 1961 when Jomo Kenyatta was released.*
  - ***Kenyatta*** *became the first president of KANU with* ***Oginga Odinga*** *as the Vice president and* ***Tom Mboya*** *as the secretary general.*
  - *In May 1963, the second national elections were held. KANU won the elections against KADU.*
  - *On Madaraka day,1st June 1963, Kenya got her internal self government a government which led Kenya to independence.*
  - *On 12th December 1963, Kenya became the last East African country to become independent.*
  - ***Prince Philip*** *handed over the instruments of power to Prime Minister* ***Jomo Kenyatta*** *in the Uhuru Stadium in Nairobi.*

THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN TANZANIA.

- **Tanganyika African National Union (TANU)**
- **United Tanganyika Party (UTP)**
- **Tanganyika African Association (TAA)**

Tanganyika African Association (TAA).

- **The Tanganyika African Association (TAA) was the first political party to be formed in Tanganyika.**
- **It was formed in 1929 by a group of young educated Africans to demand for self-government for Tanganyika.**
- **Its leaders were A.Bomani, B.Humanko and S.Kondoro until 1953 when Dr. Nyerere was elected as its president.**

Tanganyika African National Union (TANU).

- **When Mwalimu Kambarage Nyerere was elected President, he reorganised TAA and transformed it into an effective organ of National politics.**
- **On 7 July 1954, the name TAA was changed to Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) with Nyerere as its leader.**

- Through this party, Nyerere mobilised his fellow natives to demand for independence.

Objectives of TANU.

- To end tribalism in Tanganyika.
- To prepare for self-government.
- To abolish of racism.
- To promote cooperation between trade unions and cooperatives.
- To have more Africans in the civil service.

Roles played by political parties in the demand for independence.

- They demanded for the independence of East African countries.
- They united the natives in the struggle for independence.
- They defended and fought for the rights of Africans.
- They demanded the release of the nationalists who had been imprisoned.
- They dealt with common problems affecting Africans.
- They opposed discrimination of the natives by the colonialists.
- They served as a voice for Africans against colonialism.
- They protested the harsh colonial policies like forced labour.

Challenges faced by political parties in the struggle for independence.

- Some political parties were banned.
- Imprisonment of political leaders.
- Shortage of funds.
- Lack of support from all communities.
- Disunity among the East African natives.

Effects of the struggle for independence.

(a) **Positive effects**

- The natives got independence from the colonialists.
- The natives got representatives on the Legislative council.
- The living conditions of the natives were improved.
- It increased the spirit of nationalism among the natives.
- Many Africans nationalists were released from prisons.
- The rights of the East African natives were respected by the colonialists.
- It ended discrimination among races in East Africa.
- It promoted unity and brotherhood among East African natives.

(b) **Negative effects.**

- Many people lost their lives.
- It led to destruction of property.
- Many African nationalists were imprisoned.
- Many political parties were banned
- It led to separation of families.
- There was outbreak of famine in areas affected by rebellions.
- Many African natives suffered harsh treatment and poor living conditions.

THE ACHIEVEMENT OF INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

Country	*Colonised by*	*Independence from*	*Date of independence*	*Party that led it to independence.*	*First executive president*
Tanzania	Germany	Britain	9th Dec, 1962	TANU	Julius Nyerere
Rwanda	Germany	Belgium	1st July,1962	Parmehutu	Gregoire Kayibanda
Burundi	Germany	Belgium	1st July,1962	UPRONA	Mwami Mwambutsa
Uganda	Britain	Britain	9th Oct, 1962	UPC	Apollo M. Obote
Kenya	Britain	Britain	12th Dec, 1963	KANU	Jomo Kenyatta

Note:

- ✓ ***Parmehutu*** *stands for* ***Party of the Hutu Emancipation Movement*** *(French: Parti du Mouvement de l'Emancipation Hutu)*
- ✓ ***UPRONA*** *stands for* ***Union for National Progress*** *(French: Union pour le Progrès national).*
- ✓ *It was founded by* ***Louis Rwagasore*** *in 1960*
- ✓ *On* ***9th October,1962****, Uganda was granted independence by* ***Sir Walter Coutts*** *who was a British governor of Uganda by then.*
- ✓ *The national celebration of Uganda's independence took place at* ***Kololo Heroes' ground****.*
- ✓ *The British flag (Union jack) was lowered as the British anthem (God save the Queen) was being played, and the Uganda national flag was raised for its first time as the Uganda national anthem was being played.*
- ✓ *The Uganda national flag was raised for its first time by* ***Maj. Akorimo Kanuti.***
- ✓ *Dr.Apollo Milton Obote received the* ***instruments of power*** *from* ***Prince Edward George Nicholas the Duke of Kent*** *who had represented the Queen of England. These included the national constitution, national flag, a dummy key to state house and the national coat of arms.*
- ✓ ***Self government*** *is when the citizens of a country are in charge of the central government administration but under protection of another powerful country.*
- ✓ *Uganda gained self government in 1962.*
- ✓ ***Sir Edward Muteesa II*** *was the first non-executive president of Uganda.*
- ✓ *In 1963* ***Sir Edward Muteesa II*** *was appointed President of Uganda. He was the head of state but had no powers to govern.*
- ✓ *The leader of Uganda after independence was called* ***Executive Prime Minister****.*
- ✓ ***Obote*** *became the first executive prime minister of Uganda.*
- ✓ ***Benedicto Kiwanuka*** *was unable to become the first executive Prime minister because his party lost to an alliance of UPC and KY in the 1962 elections.*

INDEPENDENCE MOVEMENT LEADERS IN EAST AFRICA.

(famous Nationalists in East Africa)

Sir Edward Muteesa II



- **He was a son and a successor of Kabaka Daudi Chwa II.**
- **He was the first president of Uganda.**
- **He was exiled to Britain by Sir Andrew Cohen for rejecting the formation of the East African Federation by the British.**
- **He became the first president of Uganda and was overthrown by Dr.Apollo M.Obote when he attacked his palace in 1966.**

Apollo Milton Obote.



- **He was the leader of Uganda People's Congress (UPC) which led Uganda to independence.**
- **He led the alliance of Kabaka Yekka and UPC in the 1962 elections against Benedicto Kiwanuka of Democratic Party (DP).**
- **When the alliance won the elections, Obote became the first executive prime minister of Uganda in 1962.**
- **He made Uganda a Republic through the Republican constitution of 1967.**
- **He abolished cultural institutions in Uganda.**

Benedicto Kiwanuka.



- **He led DP against UPC in the 1961 elections.**
- **He became the first chief Minister of Uganda after winning the 1961 General Elections.**
- **He was one of the founding leaders of the Democratic Party (DP).**
- **He also became the first African leader of the Legislative Council in Uganda.**

Ignatius Kangave Musaazi.



- He formed the Uganda African farmers' Union in 1947 to demand equal rights and opportunities for the Uganda farmers.
- In March 1952, he formed the first national political party in Uganda called the Uganda National Congress (UNC) with Abu Mayanja.
- For this reason, Musaazi is recognised as a heroe in the history of Uganda and father of nationalistic politics.

Jomo Kenyatta (Johnston Kamau Wangengi)



- His original name was Johnston Kamau.
- He was named Kenyatta which means "Kenya's lamp".
- He led Kenya to independence under KANU.
- He was one of the political leaders of Mau Mau rebellion.
- In April 1953,Kenyatta was found guilty of leading Mau-Mau rebellion and he was sentenced to seven years' imprisonment.
- He was the president of Kenya from 1963 til his death on 22nd August 1978. He was succeeded by Daniel Arap Moi his vice president.

James Gichuru.



- He was the minister of defence in Kenya's cabinet after independ
- He was one of the founders of African National Union.
- He was once the president of the Kenya African National Union.

Tom Mboya.



- He was the founder of the Kenya Local Government Workers' Union.
- He was one of the founder members and the first Secretary general of KANU.
- He was the Minister for Economic planning in the Kenyan government after independence until his assassination in 1969.

Daniel Arap Moi.



- He was one of the founder members of the KANU.
- He was a minister in the KANU government after independence.
- In 1967 he became the vice president and in 1978 he became the president of Kenya up to 1998 when he retired.

Harry Thuku.

He was a founder of the younger Kikuyu Association which later changed to the East African Association in 1920.

He was a member of KAU and KANU until his death in 1970.

Oginga Odinga.



- He was one of the founder members and first vice president of KANU.
- He and others worked hard to get Kenyatta out of prison.
- He was the first Vice President of Kenya after independence.
- He founded the Kenya People's Union in 1967.

Dedan Kimathi.

- He was one of the military leaders of the Mau-Mau freedom fighters.
- The other military leader was General China.
- He was captured and executed by British forces on 15th Feb 1957.

Ronald Ngara.

- He was elected to the LEGCO in 1957.
- He was the first president of KADU.
- He was a cabinet minister in the government of Kenyatta until his death in 1972.

Julius Nyerere.



- He changed Tanganyika African Association into TANU.
- He founded the TANU.
- He was the first Chief Minister of Tanganyika in 1961.
- He led Tanganyika to independence under TANU.
- He retired from office in 1985 and was succeeded by Ali Hassan Mwinyi.

Achievements of Julius Nyerere for Tanzania.

- He united Tanganyika and Zanzibar to form Tanzania in 1964
- He was one of the founders of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU).
- He united the people of Tanganyika and made them into one nation.
- He improved the education in Tanzania.
- He made Kiswahili the national language of Tanzania.

EFFECTS OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

Political effects	Positive	❖ New states were created in Africa. ❖ Africans learnt new leadership skills. ❖ New systems of administration were introduced in East Africa.
	Negative	❖ Africans lost their independence to the colonialists. ❖ Africans were denied political rights. ❖ Traditional leaders lost their powers. ❖ Creation of new states led to separation of communities.
Social effects	Positive	❖ Formal education was introduced. ❖ Foreign languages were introduced in Africa. ❖ Social service centres like schools, hospitals were built.
	Negative	❖ Africans were segregated. ❖ It led to displacement of people. ❖ It led to loss of African culture.
Economic effects	Positive	❖ It led to development of towns and trading centres. ❖ Many cash crops were introduced in Africa.

		❖ It led to development of infrastructure like roads, industries. ❖ New forms of currency were introduced.
	Negative	❖ Heavy taxes were imposed on Africans. ❖ African local industries collapsed. ❖ It led to over exploitation of East Africa's natural resources.

POST INDEPENDENCE EAST AFRICA.

- Post independence East Africa involves the changes that have taken place in East African countries since independence.
- A number of changes have taken place in East African countries since independence. Some of them include:
  - Formation of republics.
  - Change of governments and leaders.
  - Formation of political parties.
  - Formation of the East African community.
  - Development of transport and communication lines.
  - Development of infrastructure like airports, railway lines, roads, banks, hotels etc.
  - Development of industries.
  - Development in technology.
  - Development in trade.

FORMATION OF REPUBLICS IN EAST AFRICA.

- A Republic is a state or a country that is governed by a president who is elected by the people.
- East African countries became republics in different years under different leaders and governments.

Country	*Year when it became a Republic*	*Leader/ executive president*
Rwanda	1962	Gregoire Kayibanda.
Kenya	1963	Jomo Kenyatta
Tanzania	1964	Julius Nyerere
Burundi	1966	Michael Micombero
Uganda	1967	Dr. Apollo M.Obote

Note:

- ✓ ***The 1967 constitution*** *made Uganda become a Republic.*
- ✓ *Obote became the president with more executive powers and William Wilberforce Nadiope as the vice president.*
- ✓ *The 1967 constitution also abolished all kingdoms (cultural institutions in Uganda). These included Buganda, Bunyoro, Ankole etc.*
- ✓ *Tanzania became a republic on 22nd April 1964 after the union of Zanzibar and Pemba with Tanganyika.*
- ✓ *The three states formed Tanzania with* ***Julius Nyerere*** *as the president and* ***Sheik Abeid Karume*** *as the first vice president and* ***Rashid Kawawa*** *as the second vice president.*

FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES.

- A political party is a organisation consisting of people with the same political ideologies and goals.
- There are many political parties which have been formed in East Africa since independence.

Current political parties in Uganda.

- National Resistance Movement (NRM)
- Forum for Democratic Change (FDC)
- Peoples Progressive Party (PPP)
- Peoples Development Party (PDP)
- Justice Forum (JEMA)
- Uganda People's Congress (UPC)

Current political parties in Kenya.

- Jubilee party
- Orange Democratic Movement (ODM).
- National Rainbow Coalition (NRC)
- People's Party of Kenya (PPK).
- Party of Independent Candidates of Kenya (PICK)
- Democratic Party (DP).
- United Democratic Movement (UDM).

Current political parties in Tanzania

- Chama Cha Mapinduzi (CCM)
- Labour Party (LP)
- United Democratic Party (UDP).
- National Convention for Construction and Reform (NCCR)

Current political parties in Rwanda.

- Rwandan Patriotic Front (RPF)
- Rwanda Socialist Party
- Christian Democratic Party.
- Islamic Democratic Party.
- Social Democratic Party.
- Party for Progress and Concord.
- Liberty Party.

Current political parties in Burundi

- National Council for the Defence of Democracy (NCDD)
- Independent Labour Party (ILP)
- Union for National Progress (UPRONA)
- Front for Democracy in Burundi (FDB)
- Liberal Party (LP).

Ruling political parties in East Africa.

Country	*Party*	*Leader*
Uganda	National Resistance Movement Organisation	H.E Yoweri Kaguta Museveni
Kenya	Jubilee party	Uhuru Kenyatta
Tanzania	Chama Cha Mapinduzi	John Pombe Magufuli
Rwanda	Rwandan Patriotic Front	Paul Kagame
Burundi	National Council for the Defense of Democracy	Evariste Ndayishimiye

Reasons for the formation of Political Parties in East Africa today.

- To advise the government
- To defend and fight for the rights of the people.
- To deal with common problems affecting people.
- To demand for improvement of welfare of the people.
- To protest the harsh government laws and policies.

LEADERS OF EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES SINCE INDEPENDENCE.

- East African countries have had various governments and leaders of government since independence.

Factors that have led to change of governments/ leaders in East African countries.

- Dictatorship among leaders.
- Lack of respect for human rights
- Bad governance
- Death of leaders in power.
- Political persecution
- Military coups.

Presidents of Uganda since independence.

- Sir Edward Muteesa II (9th Oct, 1962 – 2nd March, 1966)
- Dr.Apollo Milton Obote I (2nd March, 1966 – 25th Jan, 1971)
- Idi Amin Dada (25th Jan, 1971 – 11th April, 1979)
- Prof. Yusuf Kironde Lule (11th April, 1979 – 20th June, 1979)
- Godfrey Lukongwa Binaisa (20th June, 1979 – 12th May, 1980)
- Paulo Muwanga (12th May, 1980 – 15th Dec, 1980)
- Dr. Apollo Milton Obote II (17th Dec, 1980-27th July, 1985)

- **Gen.Tito Okello Lutwa (27th July, 1985 – 26th Jan, 1986)**
- **H.E Yoweri Kaguta Museveni (26th Jan, 1986 up to date)**

 *Sir Edward Muteesa II*	❖ Sir Edward Muteesa II was born on 19 November 1924 and died on 21 November 1969. ❖ He was the Kabaka of the Kingdom of Buganda in Uganda from 22nd November 1939 until his death in 1969. ❖ He was the thirty-fifth Kabaka of Buganda. ❖ The foreign press often referred to him as King Freddie, a name rarely used in Uganda. ❖ He was the first president of Uganda. ❖ He had no executive powers.(the executive powers were under the prime minister) ❖ His vice president was Sir Wilberforce Nadiope. ❖ In 1953, he was exiled to Britain by Sir Andrew Cohen for rejecting the proposed East African federation. ❖ In 1966, he was exiled to Britain by Apollo M.Obote who attacked his palace. This attack was led by Idi Amin Dada.
 *Dr Apollo Milton Obote.*	❖ He was born in Akokoro village in Apac district in Northern Uganda. ❖ Apollo Milton Obote was born on 28th December 1925 and died on 10 October 2005. ❖ he was a Ugandan political leader who led Uganda to independence in 1962 from British colonial administration. ❖ He was the first Prime Minister of Uganda from 1962 to 1966 and President of Uganda from 1966 to 1971, then again from 1980 to 1985. He was overthrown by Idi Amin in 1971, but regained power in 1980 a year after Amin's 1979 overthrow. ❖ He became the first executive president of Uganda. ❖ He attacked the Kabaka's palace in 1966 and exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to the Britain. This caused the Kabaka crisis of 1966. ❖ He abolished all kingdoms in Uganda. ❖ He declared Uganda a republic in 1967. Note:-***A republic*** *is a country headed by a democratically elected president.* ❖ He died in exile in Zambia in 2005.
 *Idi Amin Dada*	➢ **From 25TH Jan, 1971-11th April, 1979 (8yrs,76 days)** ❖ He was born in 1925 and died on 16th August 2003. ❖ He was born to a Kakwa father and a Lugbara mother. ❖ He was a Ugandan military officer who served as the President of Uganda from 1971 to 1979 ❖ He overthrew Obote through a coup. ❖ Obote had travelled to Singapore to attend a commonwealth conference. Forms of human rights abuse during Amin's regime. ❖ He banned all political parties in Uganda. ❖ He imprisoned those who opposed him. ❖ He killed those who opposed him.eg.Ben Kiwanuka. ❖ Other political opponents were kidnapped never to be seen again.

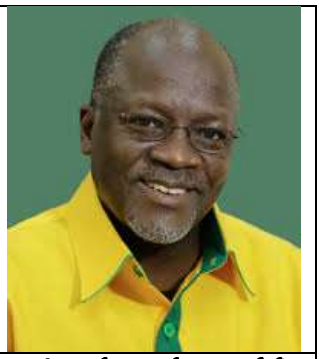
	❖ He expelled all Asians and the British in 1972 and declared an economic war. ❖ He ruled using decrees (unquestionable laws).There was no parliament during his regime. **Note:** *Amin was overthrown in 1979 when the Ugandans in exile under the Uganda National Liberation Front (UNLF) and the Tanzanian People's Defence Forces attacked Uganda.*
 *H.E Yoweri K, Museveni*	❖ He was born on 15th September 1944. ❖ He started a guerilla war against Obote II's government in 1981. ❖ He took over power from Tito Okello on 26th January, 1986. ❖ He restored kingdoms in 1993.

Presidents of Kenya since independence.

- Jomo Kenyatta 1963-1978.
- Daniel Arap Moi 1978-1998.
- Mwai Kibaki 1998-2013.
- Uhuru Kenyatta 2013 to date.



H.E Uhuru Kenyatta



H.E John Pombe Magufuli

Presidents of Tanzania since independence.

- Julius Nyerere Kambarage 1961-1985
- Ali Hassan Mwinyi 1985-1995
- Benjamin Mkapa 1995-2005
- Jakaya Kikwete. 2005-2015
- John Pombe Magufuli.2015 up to date.

Presidents of Rwanda since independence.

- Gregoire Kayibanda 1962-1973
- Juvenal Habyarimana 1973-1994
- Pasteur Bizimungu 1994-2000
- Paul Kagame 2000 up to date.



H.E.Paul Kagame



H.E Evariste Ndayishimiye

Presidents of Burundi since independence.

- Mwami Mwambutsa 1962-1966
- Ntare V 1966-1966
- Michael Micombero 1966-1976
- Jean-Baptiste Bagaza 1976-1987
- Pierre Buyoya 1987-1993
- Melchior ndadaye July 1993-Oct 1993.
- Cyprien Ntaryamira Feb 1994-April 1994.
- Sylvestre Ntibantunganya 1994-1996
- Pierre Buyoya 1996-2003
- Domitien Ndayizeye 2003-2005
- Pierre Nkurunziza 2005-2020.
- Evariste Ndayishimiye 2020 up to date.



H.E. Salva Kiii of South Sudan

CHALLENGES FACING POST INDEPENDENCE EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES

Social challenges	*Economic challenges*	*Political challenges*
▪ High levels of illiteracy. ▪ Violation of human rights. ▪ High levels of poverty ▪ Ignorance among the people. ▪ Diseases. ▪ High infant and maternal mortality rate ▪ Teenage pregnancies and early marriages. ▪ Famine. ▪ Poor social service delivery. ▪ Low life expectancy.	▪ Poor transport and communication ▪ Low level of technology. ▪ Wide spread poverty. ▪ High dependency ratio. ▪ High levels of unemployment. ▪ Corruption ▪ Brain drain ▪ Over dependence on foreign aid.	▪ Civil wars and coups ▪ Violation of human rights ▪ High number of refugees. ▪ Dictatorship among leaders. ▪ Political greed among the leaders. ▪ Political instability

Possible solutions to the problems affecting Economic developments in East Africa.

Challenge(s)	*Cause(s)*	*Possible solution(s)*
❖ Famine	▪ Prolonged drought ▪ Civil wars. ▪ Poor farming methods. ▪ Outbreak of crop pests and diseases	▪ By mechanising agriculture. ▪ By encouraging farmers to use modern farming methods. By promoting peace and security in all East African countries. ▪ By encouraging farmers to grow more food crops.
❖ Corruption	▪ Low payments ▪ Delayed payments ▪ Greed for wealth.	▪ By enforcing laws against corruption. ▪ By paying attractive salaries to the workers. ▪ By paying workers in time.
❖ Diseases. ❖ High infant and maternal mortality rate ❖ Low life expectancy.	▪ Poor feeding ▪ Poor medical services in an area	▪ By improving health services in all East African countries.
❖ Civil wars and coups ❖ High number of refugees	▪ Bad governance ▪ Greed for power	▪ By promoting good governance in all East African countries. ▪ By holding peace talks to solve conflicts.
❖ Poor transport and communication	▪ Shortage of funds.	▪ By modernising infrastructure like roads, industries.
❖ High levels of illiteracy ❖ Ignorance among the people.	▪ Social injustice against the girls. ▪ Absence of schools in an area.	▪ By introducing universal education in all East African countries. ▪ By introducing adult literacy programs. ▪ By educating parents on the value of taking children to school
❖ Violation of human rights	▪ Dictatorial rule. ▪ Ignorance about human rights.	▪ By enforcing laws against human rights in East African countries. ▪ By sensitizing people about their rights.
❖ Wide spread poverty. ❖ High levels of unemployment.	▪ Low levels of education. ▪ Diseases ▪ Corrupt government officials	▪ The governments should provide small scale loans to people to start up various projects. ▪ Encouraging people to start up small scale industries.

❖ High dependency ratio. ❖ High population growth.	▪ High birth rate ▪ High migration rate. ▪ Polygamous marriage.	▪ By encouraging the use of family planning methods. ▪ By limiting the number of children in a family by law. ▪ By encouraging girl-child education.
❖ Poor social service delivery	▪ Shortage of funds ▪ Shortage of skilled labour ▪ Corruption. ▪ Poor transport network	▪ By training more skilled labour. ▪ By constructing better roads in the country. ▪ By enforcing laws against corruption.

DEMOCRATIC RULE IN EAST AFRICA

- The word democracy comes from a Greek word "Demos" which means people.
- Democracy is a system of government that is of the people, by the people and for the people.

Meaning:

- Of the people: The government comprises of regular citizens.
- By the people: The government is elected by its citizens
- For the people: The government is mainly formed to benefit the people.

- Democracy is the system of government in which people power is exercised by all people in the country.
- A democratic government is a system of government in which power is exercised by all citizens.
- Democracy started from the city of Athens in Greece.

Principles of Democracy

- Human rights
- Rule of law
- Political stability
- Government transparency
- Democratic participation

Indicators of democracy in East Africa

- Regular free and fair elections
- Respect for human rights
- Constitutional rule
- Equality of all citizens
- Accessibility to all positions of leadership by all citizens

Advantages of democracy

- ❖ It promotes national unity.
- ❖ It promotes peaceful change of leadership.
- ❖ It promotes equality of all citizens.
- ❖ It promotes the spirit of patriotism and nationalism.
- ❖ It promotes respect for human rights.
- ❖ It controls bad leadership.

Disadvantages of democracy

- ❖ Decision making takes a long time.
- ❖ It is very expensive to exercise.
- ❖ It promotes dictatorship by the majority over the minority.

BASIC RIGHTS OF CITIZENS.

CITIZENSHIP.

- Citizenship is the legal right of belonging to a particular country.
- A citizen is a person who has the legal right of belonging to a particular country.

How one acquires citizenship of Uganda.

- Through birth (is the legal right of belonging to a country when one's parents are citizens in that particular country)
- Through descent (is the legal right of belonging to a country a person gets when his / her ancestors were citizens in that country)
- Through registration. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a foreigner who has applied for citizenship in a particular country)
- Through naturalisation (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a person after having spent a very long time in a particular country)
- Through adoption. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to foreigner who was brought up by a person who is a citizen in a particular country)

Factors that determine one's citizenship.

- Area of birth
- Marriage to a citizen
- Citizenship of parents
- Nationality law

Types of citizenship

- Single citizenship. This is the legal right of belonging to one particular country.
- Dual citizenship. This is the legal right of belonging to more than one country.

Loss of citizenship of Uganda.

- By spying against your country. (Espionage against Uganda).
- By joining the army of an enemy country to fight Uganda.
- If one's citizenship was acquired unlawfully/ by fraud.
- By denouncing the citizenship.

Responsibilities/duties/obligations of a citizen

- To pay taxes promptly
- To defend the country
- To help in maintaining law and order
- To participate in community work
- To respect the rights and freedoms of other people
- To obey national laws
- To be loyal to the rulers or head of state
- To register the birth of his or her children

HUMAN BASIC NEEDS

- Basic needs are things which man cannot live without.

Examples of human basic needs

- Food
- Clothes
- Shelter
- Medical care
- Security

Problems faced when getting human basic needs

- Poverty
- Unemployment
- Laziness
- Sickness
- Poor supply of social services
- Corruption
- Bad weather changes
- Increasing population

CHILDREN'S RIGHTS

- **Children rights are basic natural freedoms to which all children are entitled**
- **In Uganda, A child is a person below 18 years of age**

Examples of children's rights

- **A right to medical care**
- **A right to play.**
- **A right to protection.**
- **A right to have a name**
- **A right to food**
- **A right to education**

Importance of children's rights

- **They protect children from harm**
- **They promote respect for children**
- **They promote the welfare of children in the society**

Note: ***The Vice chairperson*** *is the local council I committee member who is in charge of protection of children's rights.*

CHILD ABUSE

- **Child abuse is the violation of children's rights**

Forms of child abuse

- **Physical child abuse.**
- **Emotional child abuse.**
- **Psychological child abuse.**

Examples of child abuse practices.

- **Defilement**
- **Child labour**
- **Child neglect**
- **Forced early marriage**
- **Child battering**
- **Kidnapping**

Causes of child abuse

- **Poverty**
- **Parental neglect**
- **Death of parents**
- **Divorce or separation of parents**
- **Indiscipline of children**

Effects of child abuse

- **It leads to death of children.**
- **It causes body deformity.**
- **It leads to early pregnancies.**
- **It can lead to disease infections**

Ways of controlling children abuse

- **By sensitising children about their rights.**
- **By encouraging children to move in groups.**
- **By reporting cases of child abuse to elders.**
- **By educating the public on children's rights**
- **By encouraging children to behave well.**

FUNDAMENTAL HUMAN RIGHTS.

- **Human rights are basic natural freedoms to which all people are entitled.**

Examples of fundamental human rights

- **The right to life**
- **Freedom from discrimination.**
- **Freedom from slavery.**
- **Freedom from unfair detainment.**
- **The right to trial.**
- **Freedom from torture.**
- **We are all equal before the law.**
- **Freedom to move.**
- **The right to seek a safe place to live in.**
- **Every grown up has the right to do a job.**
- **Every grown up has the right to marry.**
- **Right to a nationality.**
- **The right to own property.**
- **Freedom of thought.**
- **Freedom of expression.**
- **The right to democracy.**
- **Right to social security.**
- **The right to education.**
- **The right to food and shelter.**
- **The right to play.**

Human rights violation

- This is the denial of the basic human freedoms people are entitled to.

Forms of human rights abuse

- Torturing of political opponents.
- Raping of women.
- Killing of political opponents.
- Slavery.
- Mob justice.
- Denial of the freedom of movement.
- Imprisonment without trial
- Death penalty.

Causes of mob justice in the society today.

- Poverty
- Ignorance about of the law.
- Idleness
- Delayed justice
- Untrustworthy judicial system

Dangers of mob justice

- It causes injuries to the body.
- It leads to death of the suspect.
- It can lead to destruction of property
- It leads to body deformity.

How mob justice can be controlled in the society.

- By teaching people about the laws.
- By sensitising people about the dangers of mob justice
- By ensuring transparency in the judicial system
- By creating employment opportunities especially to the youths

How the government can protect people against the human rights violation.

- By teaching people about their rights.
- By enforcing laws against human rights abuse.
- By promoting peace and security in the country.
- By forming organisations that ensure the protection of human rights.

Note: ***The Uganda Human Rights Commission (UHRC)*** *was set up in Uganda to ensure protection of human rights*

Roles that can be played by the citizens in preventing the human rights violation.

- By respecting other people's rights.
- By reporting the cases of human rights abuse.
- By helping the police in arresting people who violate human rights.
- By sensitising other people about their rights.

THE ELECTORAL PROCESS IN EAST AFRICA.

- The electoral process is the method by which a person is chosen to hold a public office
- An election is a formal democratic process of choosing leaders by voting for them.

Types of elections.

- General elections.
- Primary elections.
- By-elections
- Referendum elections.
- Local elections.

i) **General election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at the national level eg. The president, members of parliament.

ii) **Referendum election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose to accept or reject a political proposal that concerns all citizens in the country.

iii) **Local election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at local council level ie. Local council I -V leaders.

iv) **By-election.**

- **This is a formal democratic process of choosing a leader to fill a vacant political post.**

v) **Primary election.**

- **This is a formal democratic process in which a political party chooses a candidate to contest for a specific office in the general elections.**

Causes of by-elections.

- **Death of the incumbent/ post holder.**
- **Resignation of the incumbent.**
- **Long term imprisonment of the incumbent.**
- **Cancellation of the election results by the court of law.**
- **Mental illness of the incumbent.**
- **When vote of no confidence has been made against the incumbent.**

Note: *By-elections lead to loss of government funds when organising them.*

Key activities in the electoral process

- **Voter registration.**
- **Voter education (civic education concerning elections)**
- **Party primary campaigns.**
- **Training of the electoral officials.**
- **Vote casting by registered voters.**
- **Vote counting.**

Organisation of National elections.

- ***The Independent Electoral commission* is the body responsible for organizing and conducting regular free and fair elections in the country.**
- **It is under the *Ministry of Justice and Constitutional affairs.***
- **Justice Simon Byabakama is the current chairperson of the Uganda electoral commission.**
- **The chairperson Electoral commission is appointed by the president and approved by the parliament.**
- **General elections in Uganda are conducted after every five years.**

Roles of the Electoral commission

- **To register voters and candidates.**
- **To prepare election materials**
- **To count votes and release election results.**
- **To carry out civic education concerning elections/ to carry out voter education.**
- **To demarcate polling stations and constituencies.**
- **To train the electoral officials**

Challenges faced by the Electoral commission in Uganda.

- **Shortage of funds.**
- **Poor response from the voters.**
- **Dishonest electoral officials.**
- **Voter bribery due to increased poverty among the electorate.**
- **Delay of election materials**
- **Election malpractices.**

Possible solutions to the challenges facing the Electoral commission.

- **By carrying out effective voter education. This can help to reduce the number of invalid votes.**
- **By eradicating poverty among the electorate.**
- **By distributing election materials in time.**
- **By punishing dishonest electoral officials.**
- **By providing adequate funds to the electoral commission.**

Importance of elections

- They promote democracy in the country
- They promote peaceful change/ transition of leadership.
- They enable people get rid of bad leaders
- They enable people to choose their own leaders.
- They promote respect for human rights.

Election malpractices.

- These are illegal acts done during elections.
- The election malpractices are the various forms of vote rigging.
- Some of these practices may lead to cancellation of election results and hence leading to by-elections.

These practices include;

- Voter bribery.
- Multiple voting.
- Torturing of opponents.
- Campaigning on the Election Day.

Bad practices that happen during voting.

- Bribing voters during elections.
- Harassing voters of a particular candidate.
- Ballot stuffing (putting pre-ticked ballot papers in the ballot box before elections)
- Grabbing and stealing ballot papers.
- Campaigning on the voting day.
- Cheating when counting votes.

Bad practices that happen after elections.

- Making fun of the losers of an election.
- Mis-recording of election results.
- A candidate refusing to accept defeat.
- Attacking a voter who has not voted a particular candidate.
- Unnecessary delay to announce final results.

THE ELECTORAL SYSTEMS.

- Secret ballot system
- Open election system

(i) **Secret ballot system**

- This is a system where a voter is given a ballot paper and secretly selects a person he/she wants.
- This is a modern way of voting in the whole world.

Advantages of secret ballot system

- It promotes friendship among people.
- Elections can easily be monitored by computers.
- A voter is free from interference.

Disadvantages of secret ballot system

- It is very expensive to conduct.
- Votes can easily be rigged.
- It is difficult to the illiterates and the blind.
- Election results take long to be declared.

(ii) Open elections

- These are elections held when everyone is seeing each step.
- It is done by lining up behind the candidate or by putting up the hands.
- This is the cheapest way of voting in many places.
- This was common in the past.

Advantages of open elections

- They are very cheap to conduct.
- Results can not easily be rigged.
- It is simple for the illiterates.
- It discourages bribery during elections.
- Releasing of election results takes a short time.

Disadvantages of open elections

- It promotes hatred among people.
- It limits people's freedoms.
- Some people are easily influenced by others during voting.

Materials used during the process of elections.

- Nomination forms. These are forms filled by the candidates and submitted to the Electoral Commission in order to be nominated for the posts they want.
- Ballot paper. This is a sheet bearing names and photograph of a candidate standing to be elected on particular post.
- A ballot box. This is a box where ballot papers are kept after voting.
- Voter's register.This is a list of all the people who register to participate in voting.
- Ink. It is used to mark a voter who has finished to vote.
- Basins.They are used to provide a safe place to for voters to cast his/her vote.
- Biometric machine.This is a machine which proves the details of a voter.
- Declaration forms.These are forms where election results are recorded.

Terms used in elections

- A Polling station is a place where voting takes place.
- A Polling day is the day when voting takes place.
- A Polling officer is a person who is in charge of elections at a polling station. He issues out ballot papers, declares results and fills the declaration form.
- A Polling assistant is a person who assists a polling officer at a polling station. they check for voters' names, issue out ballot papers, mark voters who have finished voting.
- A Polling constable is a person who is in charge of security at the polling station
- An Electorate refers to people in a country who qualify to vote.
- Proxy is a person who is given authority to vote on behalf of someone who is absent.
- Election monitors is a group of people from a foreign country who come to watch over elections.
- Voting by proxy is when a person who is absent gives authority to another person to vote on his/her behalf.
- The candidates' agent is a person who represents a candidate at a polling station.
- An eligible voter is a person who qualifies to vote. He/she must appear on the voters' register of that polling station.
- Returning officer is a person in charge of elections in the district or division.

- **An electoral college is a group of electors who are selected to elect a candidate to a particular office.**
- **A candidate is a person who stands to be voted/contests in an election.**
- **A valid vote is a vote that has been ticked correctly.**
- **An invalid vote is a vote that has been ticked wrongly. It is counted on none of the candidates.**
- **A constituency is an electoral area represented by a member of parliament.**

Note: ***The Citizen's Coalition for Electoral Democracy in Uganda (CCEDU)*** *is the body responsible for monitoring the general elections in Uganda.*



Testing Exercise.

1. **Name the organisation which sponsored the journeys of most European explorers to East Africa.**
2. **State any two reasons for the coming of the European explorers to East Africa.**
3. **Why did most explorers who came to Uganda begin their journeys from Bagamoyo?**
4. **Name the physical feature that attracted most European explorers to Uganda.**
5. **Why did the early explorers to East Africa first go to Zanzibar before travelling to the interior?**
6. **Why was it difficult for the early explorers to Uganda to enter through Kenya?**
7. **Name any one explorer who made two journeys to East Africa.**
8. **Mention any two features in East Africa which were discovered by Henry M. Stanley.**
9. **Why did H.M Stanley circumnavigate Lake Victoria?**
10. **Name the first European explorer to come to East Africa.**
11. **Match the explorers in list A with the information given in list B correctly.**

List A	*List B*
(viii) John Speke	Crossed the Nandi and Masai land successfully.
(ix) Sir Samuel Baker	Circumnavigated lake Victoria.
(x) Joseph Thomson	Saw and named the Ripon falls.
(xi) Henry M. Stanley	Stopped slave trade in Acholi land.

12. **How was Prince Henry the Navigator helpful to the Portuguese explorers who came to East Africa?**
13. **Why were the Portuguese interested in finding the sea route to India?**
14. **Give one reason why the natives along the East African coast refuse to welcome Vasco da Gama.**
15. **Give any two reasons why the Portuguese settled along the East African coast.**
16. **State any two reasons why the Portuguese succeeded in conquering the East African coast.**
17. **Give any two reasons for the decline of the Portuguese rule in East Africa.**
18. **Why did the Portuguese build Fort Jesus at Mombasa?**
19. **Mention any two things which show that the Arabs once lived along the East African coast.**
20. **Give one way Fort Jesus contributes to the economic development of Kenya.**
21. **State any two effects of the coming of the European explorers to East Africa.**
22. **How did exploration work lead to colonisation of East Africa?**
23. **State any three problems that were faced by the early explorers to East Africa.**
24. **How is a Protectorate different from a Colony?**
25. **Give any two reasons for the coming of the European colonialists to East Africa.**
26. **Give the meaning of each of the following;**
    (i) **Scramble for Africa.**
    (ii) **Partition of Africa.**
27. **What role did Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck play towards colonisation of Africa?**
28. **Name any one East African country which was not partitioned in the Anglo-German agreement of 1886.**

29. Which Anglo-German agreement finalized the partition of East Africa?
30. Which European country colonised Rwanda and Burundi?
31. Mention any three methods the colonialists used to acquire colonies in East Africa.
32. State any two problems the colonialists faced during the establishment of their rule in East Africa.
33. Name the first colonial rule to be signed in Uganda.
34. Mention any two terms of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
35. What role did Sir Harry Johnston play during the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement?
36. Name any two regents of kabaka Daudi Chwa.
37. Why was kabaka Daudi Chwa unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?
38. How did the 1900 Buganda agreement affect the kabaka?
39. Mention the two forms of taxes that were introduces as a result of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
40. State any three effects of the 1900 Buganda agreement.
41. Why was kabaka Mwanga unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?
42. Apart from the 1900 Buganda agreement, mention any two other agreements that were signed to put Uganda under colonial rule.
43. Give any two reasons why some natives in East Africa collaborated with the colonialists.
44. Name any two colonial collaborators in Uganda.
45. Give any two ways Semei Kakungulu promoted development in Eastern Uganda.
46. How was captain Frederick Lugard helpful to omukama Kasagama of Tooro?
47. How did Nuwa Mbaguta improve the transport network in Western Uganda?
48. State any two roles that were played by the collaborators towards the colonisation of East Africa.
49. Write the following in full.
    (i) IBEACO
    (ii) GEACO
50. Give one reason why IBEACO ran bankrupt.
51. How did Bishop Alfred Tucker support the work of the IBEACO in East Africa?
52. Give any two reasons why IBEACO was formed.
53. Mention the two systems of administration that were used by the European colonialists in East Africa.
54. Give one reason why the Germans chose to use direct rule in Tanganyika.
55. Give one way direct rule affected the African natives.
56. Which system of administration was used by the British colonialists in Uganda?
57. Give any two ways the British colonialists benefited from using the above system.
58. State any two reasons why the German colonialists were hated in Tanganyika.
59. What is a Mandate territory?
60. Name the international organisation that was formed to maintain world peace after world war I.
61. Why did German lose her colonies in Africa after world war I?
62. How was German punished by the League of Nations after world war I?
63. Which European country controlled the following countries after world war I?
    (i) Rwanda.
    (ii) Burundi
    (iii) Tanganyika
64. Name the British official who encouraged the settlement of the whites in the Kenya highlands.
65. Give any two ways the settlement of the whites in the Kenya highlands affected the natives.
66. How did colour bar policy affect the natives of Kenya?

67. Who was the first governor of the Equatorial province?
68. Why was Capt. Frederick Lugard related to the IBEACO?
69. Name the British prime minister who declared Uganda a British protectorate.
70. Give any two ways Sir Hesketh Bell contributed to the development of Uganda.
71. Name the British governor who formed the LEGCO in Uganda.
72. How did Sir Philip Mitchell promote higher education in Uganda?
73. What was the major cause of the Kabaka crisis of 1953?
74. Why was Sir Edward Muteesa II exiled to Britain in 1953?
75. Name the British governor of Uganda who exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain.
76. Give any two reason why the LEGCO was formed in Uganda.
77. Name the first three Ugandan natives to be nominated on the LEGCO in Uganda.
78. Mention any three causes of the Maji Maji rebellion.
79. Apart from the Maji Maji, mention any three other rebellions that were staged in East Africa during colonial rule.
80. How was Jomo Kenyatta related to the Mau Mau rebellion?
81. Give any two ways Mau Mau rebellion affected the natives of Kenya.
82. Why is Seychelles islands historically remembered in Buganda and Bunyoro?
83. Name any four colonial resisters in East Africa.
84. State any two reasons why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny against the colonialists in Uganda.
85. Give any two reasons why Africans' resistance against colonial rule was easily defeated.
86. How was the attainment of Uganda's independence different from that of Kenya?
87. Give any three reasons why the natives in East Africa demanded for their independence.
88. Complete the table below.
89. Name the political parties that led the following East African countries to independence.
    (i) Uganda.
    (ii) Kenya
    (iii) Tanzania
90. State the main reason for the formation of political parties in East Africa during colonial rule.
91. Give any four ways colonial rule affected the people of East Africa.
92. Give the meaning of the term Democracy.
93. Mention any two indicators of Democracy in East African countries.
94. State any three advantages of Democracy.
95. Give any three ways one can acquire citizenship of Uganda.
96. State any three responsibilities of a good citizen.
97. State any three causes of a by-election in a country.
98. Give any three ways the electoral commission organises national elections in Uganda.
99. Mention any three examples of election malpractices.
100. Give any two ways elections are important to a country.

TOPIC 5: RESPONSIBLE LIVING IN THE EAST AFRICAN ENVIRONMENT

INTRODUCTION TO ENVIRONMENT.

- Environment refers to all things that surround man

Components of the environment

- Animals
- Plants
- Water bodies
- Buildings
- Land/ soil
- Roads
- Vehicles
- Birds
- Insects

Types of the environment

- Biological environment.
- Physical environment.

Biological environment

- This is the type of environment which consists of living things

Components of the biological environment

- Plants
- Animals

Physical environment

- This is the type of environment which consists of non-living things

Examples of physical environment that can be seen.

- Mountains.
- Land/ soil.
- Cars
- Hills
- Valleys
- Buildings

Examples of physical environment that cannot be seen

- Air
- Vapour
- Temperature
- Electricity

ENVIRONMENTAL PRACTICES

- These are activities which people do on the environment
- Some of these activities are friendly to the natural environment (positive) while others are dangerous to the natural environment (negative).

(a) **Negative environmental practices**

- These are human activities which destroy the environment
- These activities lead to environmental degradation

Note: ***Environmental degradation*** *is the misuse of the environment lowering its quality and productivity.*

Examples of negative environmental practices (activities that degrade the environment)

- Deforestation (the massive cutting down of trees without replacement)
- Un controlled bush burning.
- Overgrazing. The grazing of many animals on the same piece of land for a long period of time
- Overcultivation. The use of land without giving it time to rest
- Site clearing
- Construction of roads
- Making of bricks

Note: *Most of these negative environmental practices lead to soil erosion*

*Qn:**How do they lead to soil erosion?***
They leave the land bare exposing it to the agents of soil erosion

Causes of environmental degradation

- **Over population**
- **Wide spread of poverty**
- **Unemployment**
- **Insecurity/ political instability**
- **Industrialisation**

Natural causes of environmental degradation

- **Floods**
- **Storms**
- **Drought**
- **Earthquake**
- **Volcanic eruptions**
- **Lightning**

Land degradation.

- **This is the misuse of soil lowering its quality and productivity.**

Ways people misuse/ degrade land.

- **Through deforestation.**
- **By carrying out overgrazing.**
- **Through over cultivation.**
- **Through swamp drainage.**
- **By dumping non-biodegradable materials on land.**
- **Through uncontrolled mining.**
- **Through bush burning.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Land fragmentation*** *is the division of land into plots.*
- ✓ ***Soil leaching*** *is sinking of soil nutrients to deeper layers of the soil where plant roots can not reach.*
- ✓ ***Land consolidation*** *is the process of putting together small pieces of land to form a big piece.*

Effects of soil degradation

- **It leads to shortage of land for crop growing.**
- **It leads to spread of deserts through fragmentation.**
- **It causes floods.**

Soil erosion.

- **This is the removal of top soil by the agents of erosion.**

Agents of soil erosion

- **Flowing water**
- **Moving animals**
- **Wind**

Causes of soil erosion

- **Bush burning**
- **Over cultivation**
- **Deforestation**
- **Over grazing**
- **Monocropping**

Wetland degradation.

- **This is the misuse of wetlands lowering their quality and productivity.**

Ways how wetlands are degraded.

- **Through wetland drainage (this is the removal of water from wetlands)**
- **Wetland pollution (dumping of industrial wastes, garbage and sewage in swamps)**
- **Burning of wetlands**
- **Over harvesting of wetland resources**

How to conserve wetlands.

- **By enforcing laws against wetland degradation.**
- **By teaching people about the importance wetlands.**

Uses of wetlands

- **They control floods.**
- **They are habitats for aquatic animals.**
- **They help in the formation of rain.**
- **They are fishing grounds.**
- **They provide raw materials for craft work.**
- **They help to clean water (they have sponge-like roots which filter water)**

Qn: How wetlands help to form rain.

- *They reduce the speed of flowing water making more water to evaporate and form rain.*

Dangers of environmental degradation

- **It leads to soil erosion**
- **It leads to soil infertility**
- **It leads to floods**
- **It leads to prolonged drought**
- **It leads to global warming**
- **It leads to diseases.**
- **It leads to displacement of wild animals.**
- **It leads to landslides**

(b) Positive environmental practices

- **These are human activities which help to conserve the environment**
- **Environmental conservation/ protection is the act of protecting the environment from lowering its quality and productivity**

General methods of environmental conservation

- **Sustainable use of the environment**
- **Waste management**
- **Protection of the environment by NEMA**

SUSTAINABLE USE OF THE ENVIRONMENT

This is the use of natural products and energy in the way that cannot harm the environment.

Examples of sustainable use of the environment.

- **Afforestation**
- **Re-afforestation**
- **Controlled wetland harvesting.**
- **Alternative energy use.**
- **Proper farming methods.**

○ **Afforestation.**

- **This is the planting of tree where they have never existed.**
- **Re-afforestation is the planting of tree where they have ever existed**

Importance of trees in the environment.

- **They help in rain formation**
- **They control soil erosion by reducing the speed of rain drops that fall on the ground**
- **They are habitats for animals.**
- **They earn income through attracting tourists.**
- **They provide herbal medicine.**

- ❖ They act as wind breaks.
- ❖ They provide food.
- ❖ They purify air by absorbing carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen.

○ <u>Controlled wetland harvesting.</u>

- This prevents the extinction of wetlands.

○ <u>Proper farming methods</u>

- These are methods of farming which help to maintain soil fertility and prevent environmental degradation.

<u>Examples of proper farming methods</u>

- Crop rotation
- Contour ploughing
- Terracing
- Mulching
- Strip cropping
- Rotational grazing
- Inter cropping
- Agro-forestry
- Bush fallowing

<u>Examples of poor farming methods</u>

- Overgrazing.
- Over cultivation.
- Crop rotation.
- Monocropping
- Bush burning

(i) Crop rotation.

- This is the growing of different crops in different seasons on the same piece of land.

<u>Advantages of crop rotation</u>

- ❖ It maintains soil fertility.
- ❖ It breaks the life cycle of pests.

(ii) Terracing.

- Terracing controls soil erosion by reducing the speed of running water.
- Soil erosion is the removal of top soil by the agents of soil erosion.

<u>Agents of soil erosion</u>

- Flowing water
- Moving animals
- Wind

(iii) Mulching

- Mulching is the covering of top soil with dry plant materials.

<u>Examples of mulches</u>

- Dry leaves
- Dry grass
- Banana fibres

<u>Advantages of mulching</u>

- ❖ It maintains soil fertility.
- ❖ It controls soil erosion.
- ❖ It keeps the soil moist.
- ❖ It controls the growth of weeds.

<u>Disadvantages of mulching</u>

- ❖ Mulches are breeding places for pests e.g termites
- ❖ Mulched gardens can easily catch up fire.

(iv) Agroforestry is the growing of crops together with useful trees in the same garden.

Advantages of agroforestry

- Trees provide shade to crops.
- Trees act as wind breaks
- Leaves which fall from trees form humus

(v) Alternative energy use

- This is where people use other sources of energy apart from fuel wood.

Examples of other sources of energy

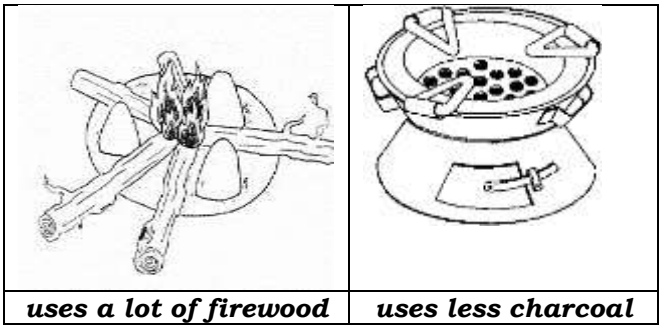
- Solar energy from the sun
- Bio gas from garbage and animal wastes
- Hydro electricity from fast flowing water
- Geo thermal from hot springs

Importance of using other sources of energy in the environment.

- It reduces air pollution through charcoal burning.
- It reduces the rate of deforestation for fuel wood.
- It helps in proper use of the garbage in the environment.

Examples of fuel wood

- Charcoal
- Fire wood



uses a lot of firewood | *uses less charcoal*

Examples of minerals that are used as sources of energy

- Coal
- Crude oil
- Uranium

Conservation of wood fuel

- By using energy saving cooking stoves.
- By turning saw dust into charcoal after mixing it with coffee husks
- By using energy saving cooking methods like covering what is being cooked
- Through rural electrification.



an energy saving grate.

Dangers of using wood fuel

- It leads to deforestation.
- It leads to air pollution through charcoal burning.
- It leads to soil erosion through cutting down trees.
- It leads to reduction in rain formation.

WASTES MANAGEMENT.

- A waste is a material that is a by-product of human activity that has no further value.
  Or: Wastes are things that have no value to humans.

Types of wastes

- Biodegradable wastes
- Non-biodegradable wastes

- Biodegradable wastes are wastes which can decay/ rot.

Examples of biodegradable wastes

- Animal remains.
- Plant remains eg baskets, paper bags, palm leaves bags.

- Non-biodegradable wastes are wastes which do not decay/ rot.

Examples of Non-biodegradable wastes.

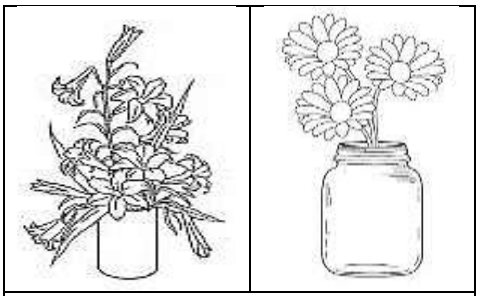
- Plastics
- Metals/ scrap
- Polythene bags
- Rubber products

The 5Rs in proper management of wastes

- Reuse
- Recycle
- Reduce
- Reject/ refuse
- Return

○ Reuse: This means using wastes for other purposes eg.

- Using a polythene bag more than once
- Using containers to hold flowers
- Using containers as dust bins



Flowers in old tins

○ Recycle: This involves making new products from the materials that had been thrown away.

Examples of materials that can be recycled

- Plastics
- Metals/ scrap
- Glass

○ Refuse/ reject: Here,one rejects to use non-biodegradable materials.

○ Return: This involves returning wastes to shops and manufacturers where they were bought.

○ Reduction: This involves minimising the generation of wastes in the environment.

Causes for the increase of wastes in the environment.

- Lack of proper waste disposal places
- Use of resources wastefully.
- Ignorance about the methods of recycling.

CONSERVATION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

- **Environment conservation** is the protection of the natural environment from lowering its quality and productivity.
- It involves careful use and management of resources in the environment.

(a) **Conservation of soil**

- By mulching
- By terracing
- By contour ploughing
- By crop rotation
- By rotational grazing

Note:

- ✓ *Soil is conserved by controlling soil erosion.*
- ✓ ***Devegetation** is the removal of the plant cover leaving the soil bare.*
- ✓ *It leaves the land bare exposing it to agents of soil erosion.*

Human activities that lead to devegetation.

- ✓ *Bush burning*
- ✓ *Deforestation*
- ✓ *Overgrazing*

Conservation of wetlands

- **Through controlled harvesting of wetland products**
- **Avoid dumping garbage in wetlands**
- **By enforcing laws against swamp reclamation.**

Conservation of air.

- **Air is conserved by controlling air pollution.**
- **Air pollution is the introduction of harmful substances into air/ atmosphere.**

How to control air pollution

- **By planting more trees**
- **By treating waste gases from industries before being released to the atmosphere**
- **Proper maintenance to reduce exhaust fumes.**

Conservation of forests

- **Through afforestation and reafforestation.**
- **Through controlled harvesting of trees**
- **Through re-afforestation**
- **By establishing forest reserves**
- **By encouraging the use of energy saving cooking stoves**
- **Through rural electrification ie. it controls the rate of deforestation by reducing demand for wood fuel.**

Note: ***Rural electrification*** *is the extension of electricity in rural areas.*

Conservation of water.

- **By protecting trees in the environment.**
- **By harvesting rain water and using it wisely.**
- **By closing taps after fetching water.**
- **By reporting leaking water pipes to leaders.**
- **By removing wastes settling in trenches.**

Bodies that promote conservation of the natural environment in Uganda.

- ✓ **National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)**
- ✓ **National Forestry Authority (NFA)**
  This conserves forests in Uganda.
- ✓ **Uganda Wildlife Authority (UWA)**
  This is in charge of conservation of wildlife in Uganda.

National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)

- **It was started in 1995**
- **It is in charge of conserving the environment/ wetlands in Uganda.**
- **NEMA is under the *Ministry of Water and Environment.***

How NEMA conserves the environment/ roles of NEMA.

- ❖ **It teaches people about the importance of forests and swamps.**
- ❖ **It creates forest reserves.**
- ❖ **It enforces laws against wetland degradation.**
- ❖ **It evicts people settling in wetlands.**

Challenges faced by NEMA.

- ❖ **Shortage of funds.**
- ❖ **Ignorance among the people about the importance of wetlands.**
- ❖ **Rapid population growth. This creates need for more land for settlement.**

Importance of conserving vegetation.

- ❖ **It reduces soil erosion.**
- ❖ **It conserves the natural beauty of the environment.**
- ❖ **It promotes constant supply of wood fuel.**
- ❖ **It conserves the natural habitat for animals.**
- ❖ **It promotes tourism.**
- ❖ **It promotes constant supply of craft raw materials.**
- ❖ **It controls drought.**

CONSEQUENCES OF IRRESPONSIBLE LIVING IN THE ENVIRONMENT.

- **Floods**
- **Drought**
- **Soil erosion**
- **Land slides**
- **Pollution of the environment**
- **Diseases**
- **Resource depletion**
- **Over production of children**

(a) Floods

- **This is a large amount of water covering an area that is usually dry.**
- **It is caused by too much rainfall.**
- **Floods occur in low lands/ valleys.**

Effects of floods

- ❖ **They lead to destruction of property.**
- ❖ **They lead to loss of animal and human life.**
- ❖ **They lead to displacement of people.**

Solutions to floods

- ❖ **By planting trees along river banks**
- ❖ **By constructing reservoirs to hold excess water**
- ❖ **By maintaining vegetation cover in catchment areas**

(b) Landslides

- **This is a large mass of soil that falls down the slopes of a mountain.**
- **Landslides mainly occur in highland areas where trees have been cut down on a large scale.**

Causes of landslides

- ❖ **Too much rainfall.**
- ❖ **Deforestation.**

Effects of landslides.

- ❖ **They lead to destruction of property.**
- ❖ **They lead to loss of animal and human life.**
- ❖ **They lead to displacement of people.**

Note:

- ✓ *Landslides can be controlled in highland areas by planting more trees.*
- ✓ *The government resettled the people who were affected by landslides in Bududa to Western Uganda which had a safer plateau.*

(c) Desertification/ prolonged drought.

- **This is the condition by which an area receives very little rainfall and has very few plants growing on it.**
- **A Desert is an area that receives very little rainfall and has very few plants growing on it.**
- **Desertification comes as a result of uncontrolled removal of vegetation and swamp drainage.**

Causes of drought

- **Deforestation**
- **Swamp drainage**
- **Bush burning.**

Effects of drought

- **It leads to shortage of food/ famine.**
- **It dries up pasture for animals.**
- **It leads to withering of crops/ crop failure**
- **It leads to soil infertility.**

How to control drought.

- **By planting more trees.**
- **By protecting vegetation and water sources.**

Note:- *Food production can be increased in desert areas by carrying out irrigation farming, growing drought-resistant crops and by growing fast maturing crops.*

(d) Pollution.

- **This is the introduction of harmful substances in the environment**

Types of pollution

- **Air pollution**
- **Water pollution**
- **Land pollution**
- **Sound/ noise pollution**

(i) Air pollution.

- **This is the introduction of harmful substances into the atmosphere.**

Things which pollute air (how air is polluted)

- **Fumes from factories and cars.**
- **Tobacco smoke from smokers.**
- **Smoke from volcanic mountains.**
- **Smoke from burning bushes and charcoal.**
- **Radioactive substances from bombs.**

Solutions to air pollution

- **Avoid bush burning.**
- **By maintaining vegetation cover.**
- **By fixing exhaust gas purifiers.**

(ii) Water pollution.

- **This is the contamination of water sources with harmful substances.**

How water is polluted.

- **By dumping wastes into water bodies.**
- **By urinating and defecating into water bodies.**
- **By discharging untreated sewage into water bodies.**

How to control water pollution

- **By planting trees along river banks.**
- **By treating industrial wastes and sewage before releasing them into water bodies.**
- **By cleaning wells regularly.**

- Avoid pouring wastes into water bodies.

(iii) Land pollution.

- This is the process of lowering the quality of land by adding wastes.
- It is the introduction of harmful substances on land.

How land is polluted.

- By dumping garbage on land
- By dumping rocks from mines on land
- By dumping used tins, polythene bags and plastics on land
- Excessive use of artificial fertilizers.
- Dumping of old vehicles and factory machines on land.

Solutions to pollution of land.

- By recycling plastics and metals.
- By using compost manure instead of artificial fertilizers.

(iv) Sound pollution.

- This is the condition when there is too much noise in the environment.

Causes of noise pollution

- Noise from war weapons.
- Noise from birds eg weaver birds.
- Noise from many people gathered in a sports stadium.
- Noise from engines of vehicles.

Effects of noise pollution

- It causes stress.
- It leads to diseases.
- It can lead to mental disorders.
- It causes permanent damage to the hearing system.

Diseases related to pollution

Type of pollution	*Disease(s)*
Water pollution	-cholera -dysentery -diarrhea -typhoid fever
Air pollution	-asthma -lung cancer -flu
Sound pollution	-headache -mental disorders

(e) Silting.

- This is the deposition of soil into water bodies by erosion.
- Silt is the soil carried by flowing water.

Effects of silting.

- It leads to creation of shallow water bodies
- It causes floods.

Solutions to silting.

- By controlling soil erosion
- Avoid cultivation along river banks

CLIMATE CHANGE.

- Climate change is the variation/ fluctuation of the weather patterns of an area.
- It is the change in the average weather condition over a long time.
- Global warming is the major cause of climate change.

Global warming

- This is the constant rise of world temperatures.

- ***Or:*** **This is the continuous heating of the earth due to emission of greenhouse gases to the atmosphere.**

Examples of greenhouse gases.

- **Carbon dioxide**
- **Carbon monoxide**
- **Nitrous oxide**

Causes of global warming.

- **Deforestation**
- **Bush burning**
- **Industrialisation**
- **Ozone layer depletion**

Note

- ✓ *Global warming occurs when the ozone layer is destroyed by excessive sun heat (rays).*
- ✓ *Ozone layer is a layer of gases that protect the earth from strong sun rays.*
- ✓ *When trees are cut and bushes burnt, it reduces on the vegetation that would have absorbed carbon dioxide which destroys the ozone layer.*

Effects / indicators of global warming

- ❖ **Acidic rainfall**
- ❖ **Melting of snow on high mountains.**
- ❖ **Excessive heat during day.**
- ❖ **Incidents of severe and prolonged drought.**
- ❖ **Reduction in the volume of water in water bodies.**

Ways of reducing global warming.

- ❖ **By planting more trees.**
- ❖ **By using renewable sources of energy. eg hydro electricity and solar energy.**
- ❖ **By treating industrial fumes before emissions.**
- ❖ **Banning importation of old vehicles.**
- ❖ **By enforcing laws that protect the environment.**

Factors that cause change in climate.

- **Prevailing winds.**
- **Ocean currents**
- **Drainage/ Nearness to water bodies.**
- **Latitude (distance from the equator)**
- **Altitude**
- **Human activities.**
- **Vegetation**

Indicators of climate change.

- ❖ **Prolonged drought.**
- ❖ **Occurrence of storms.**
- ❖ **Reduction of crop productivity.**
- ❖ **Occurrence of floods.**

WEATHER DISASTERS.

- ***A disaster*** **is an unplanned occurrence which causes great harm or damage.**

Examples of weather related disasters

- **Floods**
- **Landslides**
- **Drought**
- **Storms**
- **Lightning**
- **Hailstorms.**

Examples of manmade disasters.

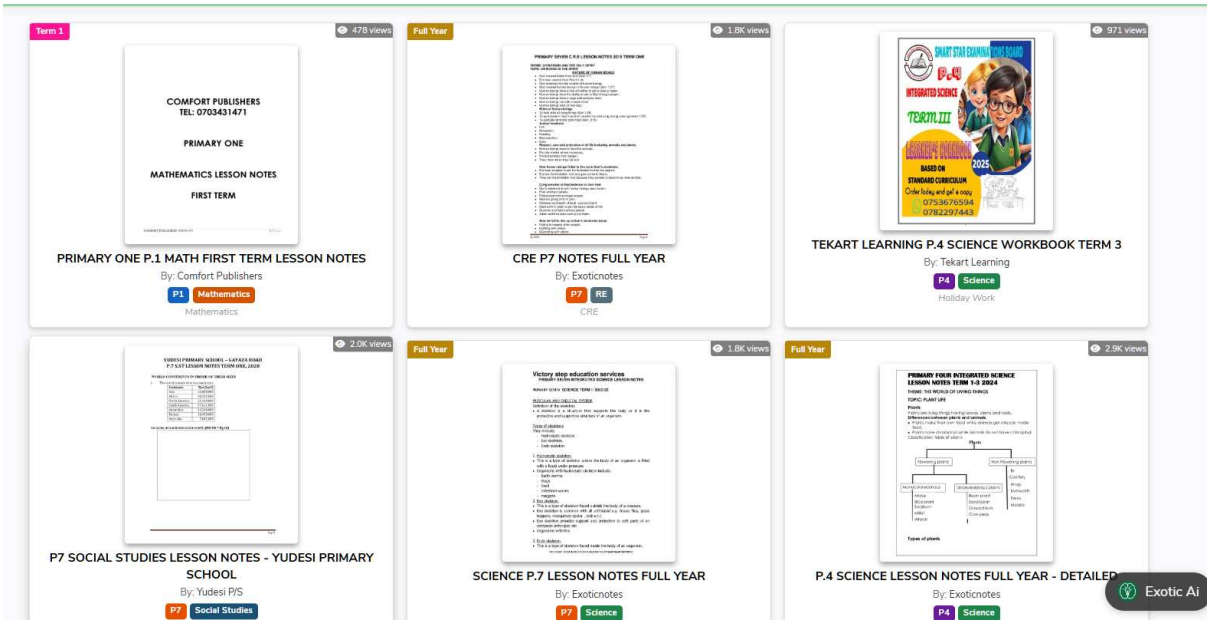
- Nuclear explosions.
- Plane crushes
- Food poisoning
- Terrorist attacks
- Motor accidents



Testing Exercise.

1. Mention any three components of the natural environment.
2. What is Environmental degradation?
3. Mention any three ways man degrades the environment.
4. How does burning of bushes lead to soil erosion?
5. Give any two ways people degrade land.
6. State the major cause of land fragmentation in Kigezi sub-region.
7. Mention any three causes of soil erosion.
8. State any three dangers of environmental degradation.
9. How is Afforestation different from Reafforestation?
10. State any two dangers that may result from wetland degradation.
11. Give any two ways trees support the life of wild animals.
12. Give any one way tees are important in people's homes.
13. Mention any three proper methods of farming the government recommends its citizens to use.
14. Give any two reasons why farmers are always encouraged to practise agro-forestry.
15. Mention any two minerals which are a source of energy.
16. Name the type of energy which is obtained from each of the following.
    (i) Fast flowing water.
    (ii) Hot springs
    (iii) Garbage and animal wastes.
17. Mention any two examples of wood fuel.
18. Give any two ways wood fuel can be conserved.
19. Give one step the government has taken to reduce minimise the use of wood fuel in rural areas.
20. Write down the 5Rs used in proper management of wastes.
21. Mention any two examples of non-biodegradable wastes in the environment.
22. Give one way one can reuse wastes in the environment.
23. How is a recycling community useful to people in your community.
24. Mention any four consequences of irresponsible living in the environment.
25. Give one way floods affect the natural environment.
26. What causes landslides in highland areas?
27. How best can people living in highland areas control landslides?
28. Give the meaning of the term Pollution.
29. Give any two ways people pollute water bodies in the environment.
30. Mention any two diseases that result from contamination of water bodies.
31. Mention any three factors influencing the climate of East Africa.
32. Give the meaning of the term Global warming.
33. Mention any three examples of weather-related disasters.
34. State any two causes of global warming.
35. Mention any two indicators of climate change in some parts of East Africa.

This document was downloaded from https://exoticnotes.com



Do you need more LESSON NOTES for Primary (All classes)?

Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/

If you need LESSON NOTES for SCIENCE (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/science/

If you need LESSON NOTES for English (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/english/

If you need LESSON NOTES for Mathematics (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/mathematics/